





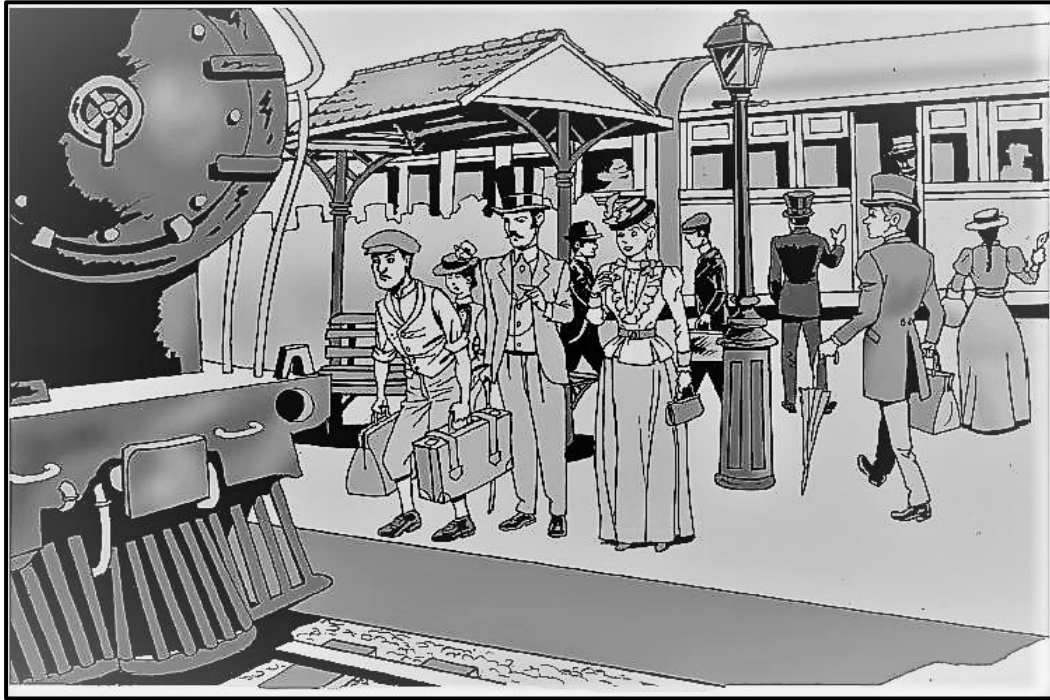
The Prisoner of Zenda

Mr. Ahmed El-Shabka

Chapter 1

1. I was eating breakfast in the dining room of my brother's house one sunny morning, thinking about what I would do that week, when my brother's wife Rose came into the room. **"Rudolf, you're 29 years old,"** she said. **"Are you ever going to do anything useful?"** **"Rose,"** I answered, putting down my egg spoon, **"why should I do anything? I have nearly enough money to do anything I want to, and I enjoy an important position in society: my brother's Lord Burlesdon and you are a countess."** **"But you've done nothing except..."** **"Be lazy? It's true. I'm a member of the Rassendyll family and our family don't need to do things."**
2. This annoyed Rose, because her family were rich but less important than the Rassendylls. At this moment, my brother Lord Burlesdon (who we were happy to call simply Robert) came into the room. **"Robert, I'm so happy you're back!"** cried Rose. **"What's the matter, my dear?"** Robert asked her. **"She's angry because she thinks I don't do anything,"** I explained to my brother. At this point, I should explain that I had not been lazy all my life. I had studied hard and learned a lot when I was at a German school and German university. I spoke German as well as I spoke English, and I also knew how to speak French, Italian and Spanish. I was good with a gun and a strong swordsman. I was also very good at riding a horse.
3. **"It's not just your red hair that makes you different from your brother,"** said Rose. **"He also realises his position in society has responsibilities. You only see opportunities in yours."** **"To a man like me, opportunities are responsibilities,"** I explained. **"Good, because I have some news for you,"** said Rose. **"Sir Jacob Borrodaile tells me he'll offer you a real opportunity. He's going to be an ambassador in six months' time, and he says he's happy for you to work for him. I hope you'll take this job, Rudolf."** My sister-in-law has a way of asking people to do thing which is impossible to refuse. Moreover, I thought this job sounded quite interesting, so I said, **"If in six months' time I'm in a position to take this job, then I'll certainly say yes."** **"Oh, Rudolf, how good of you!"** said Rose. **"Where will he be working?"** I asked. **"Sir Jacob doesn't know which country it will be, but he's sure it'll be a good embassy."** **"For you I'll do it, even if it's a terrible embassy,"** I replied.
4. Now I had made my promise to Rose, but there were still six months to go before the job would start, and I began to think about what I could do in this time. I decided that I would visit Ruritania, a small country in the middle of Europe. My family have always had an interest in that country because in 1733, Countess Amelia Rassendyll married a member of the Ruritanian royal family, the Elphbergs. In fact my brother has paintings of her and her descendants on his walls: many of them have the same red hair and straight noses as the Elphbergs; I am the latest one to have the appearance of the Ruritanian royal family. My decision was helped a few days later when I read in The Times newspaper that Rudolf the Fifth was to become King of Ruritania in the next three weeks, and that amazing celebrations were planned for this joyous occasion. I thought how fantastic it would be to see such an event and began to prepare for my journey.
5. I do not like to tell people where I go on my travels, so I told Rose that I was going walking in the Alps. I did not want her to think I was being lazy either, so I told her I was going to write a book about social problems in the country. **"You're going to write a book? That would be such a good thing to do, wouldn't it, Robert?"** said Rose. **"Yes, indeed. Writing a book's the best way to get into politics,"** agreed Robert, and he should know, as he has written many books himself. **"You're right,"** I said to them both. However, I had no plan to really write a book, which shows how little we know about the future. Because here I am now, writing a book as I had promised to do, even if the book has nothing to do with the social problems in the Alps. But let me begin near the start of my journey to Ruritania.
6. My Uncle William always said that no man should ever pass through Paris without spending twenty-four hours in the city, so I took his advice and booked a night at The Continental Hotel. As soon as I had checked in, I called on some old friends that I knew in the French capital: George Featherly, who worked at the embassy, and Bertram Bertrand, who was now a famous journalist in the city. That evening, we all ate in a restaurant and they told me all about the latest exciting events in Paris. **"We've had quite a few important people visiting the city recently,"** said Bertram. **"Anyone I'd know?"** I asked. **"Well, I met Antoinette de Mauban today,"** Bertram replied. **"You've probably heard of her. She's a lady who's well known for her wealth and ambition. But she's leaving Paris today, we don't know where she's going to next."** **"So why did she come to Paris?"** I asked. **"She was a guest of the Duke of Strelsau,"** said George. **"I met him at the embassy yesterday. He's the half-brother to the King of Ruritania. People say he was his father's favourite son. He's gone back for the coronation, although I don't think he'll enjoy it very much because he probably wishes he were the King. I don't think he likes being only a Duke."** **"I hear he's a clever man, though,"** said Bertram. **"He's extremely clever, I'd say,"** agreed George.

7. The next day, George came with me to the station and I bought a ticket to my next stop, Dresden. I did not tell him that I was going to Ruritania. If I had, the news would have gone immediately to Bertram and then it would have been in all the newspapers within days. Just as I was about to get on the train, George suddenly smiled and walked away to talk to a beautiful, tall and fashionably dressed woman of about thirty who was standing at the ticket office with two younger women. I thought these must be her servants. **"You have an important person to travel with,"** George told me when he returned a few minutes later. **"That's Antoinette de Mauban and she's also going to Dresden."**



8. Paris was soon behind me. It was a long and boring journey and I wondered if I would see Antoinette de Mauban in the dining car when I ate in the train that evening, or perhaps at breakfast the next morning. However, I did not see the lady again until the following day, when both she and I got on the next train from Dresden to Ruritania. She was further up the train, however, and did not see me. A few hours later, the train arrived at the Ruritanian border where we stopped so the guards could check our passports. I was surprised when the guards stared at me and my passport for some time before letting me into the country. Once in Ruritania, I bought a newspaper and read that the King's coronation was to be in two days' time, which was much earlier than I had thought. The newspaper described the excitement in the country and in particular the capital city, Strelsau, where it said all the hotels were full with people who wanted to see the event. On reading this, I decided it would be best to stop at Zenda, a small town eighty kilometres from the capital, and about ten kilometres from the border. Here I could walk in the hills and see the town's famous castle, then I could take the train for the day to Strelsau to see the coronation. As I got off the train at Zenda, I saw Antoinette de Mauban, who remained on the train for its journey to the capital, but she did not look at me.
9. I was welcomed at the inn in Zenda by an old woman who ran it with her two daughters. She said she was not very interested in what happened in the capital, but she loved the Duke of Strelsau, who she called Duke Michael. He was the man who was responsible for the land around Zenda and its castle. In fact, the hotel owner said she wished the Duke was the new King and not his brother. **"We all know Duke Michael,"** she explained. **"He's always lived in Ruritania and he cares about the people, so people like him. As for the King, well, he's almost a stranger. He's been abroad for most of his life and not many people even know what he looks like. Now the King's staying in a hunting lodge in the forest, very near to Zenda. From there he'll travel to the capital for his coronation."** I was interested to hear this, and decided I would walk in the forest the next day so that I might see him. **"I wish he'd stay there in the forest,"** continued the woman. **"People say he only likes hunting and good food. He should let the Duke become our King. And there are many others who think the same."** **"Well I don't like Duke Michael,"** said her older daughter. **"They say the King has red hair, just like you!"** **"Many men have red hair like me,"** I laughed. **"How do you know the King has red hair?"** the old woman asked her daughter. **"Johann, the Duke's servant, told me,"** she explained. **"He's seen the King at the hunting lodge."** **"But why's the King here, if it's the Duke's land?"** I asked. **"The Duke invited him, sir,"** explained the old lady. **"The Duke's in Strelsau, preparing for the coronation."** **"So they are good friends?"** **"I don't know if you can be good friends if you want the same thing."** **"What do you mean?"** **"Duke Michael would like to be King, too, I'm sure."** **"Well!"** I said. **"I feel quite sorry for the Duke, but it's right that the older brother becomes king."**

10. "Who's talking of the Duke?" said a deep voice from outside the door. **"We have a guest, Johann,"** called the old lady, as a man entered the room. When he saw me, he took off his hat and stepped back in surprise, as though he had seen something amazing. **"What's the matter, Johann?"** asked the old lady. **"This gentleman's come to our country to see the coronation."** **"It's the red hair,"** said one of the daughters. **"We don't often see it in our country unless you're part of the King's family, the Elphbergs. Many of them have red hair."** The man continued to stare at me, but said, **"Good evening, sir. I'm sorry, I didn't expect to see any new guests here."** **"Don't worry,"** I said. **"It's late and time I went to bed. I wish you all a good night. Thank you, ladies, for our conversation."** I stood up to go to my room, when Johann suddenly said, **"Sir, have you ever seen our King?"** **"No, I've never seen him, but I hope to do so on Wednesday at the coronation."** Johann said no more, but I felt his eyes on me as I walked up the stairs.
11. The next morning, Johann seemed much more relaxed. When he heard that I was going to Strelsau, he said I could stay at his sister's house. She was married to a wealthy trader and she had invited him to stay with them for the coronation, but he was unable to go. I was very happy to have this opportunity and accepted his offer, so he said he would contact his sister at once and tell her to expect me that day. I decided, however, that I still wanted to see the forest where the King was staying, so first I planned to walk for sixteen kilometres through the forest to the next station along the line, where I could catch a train to the capital. I did not tell Johann about this plan, as I did not think it would be important if I arrived at his sister's later in the day. So I sent my luggage on to the station and said goodbye to the old lady and her daughters, and set off up the hill towards the castle. After that, it was a short walk to get into the forest.
12. Half an hour later, I reached the castle. It was very old but well built, with a moat all around it. Behind it was a large modern mansion, which was used by the Duke of Strelsau as his country home. The mansion was reached by a wide road, but the old castle could only be reached by a drawbridge between it and the mansion. I was pleased to see that the Duke had such a well-defended house, even if he were not to become King. Soon I reached the dark forest and I walked for about an hour, pleased that the tall trees gave me cool shade: not much sun reached the ground through the many leaves. It was a beautiful place and after a time I decided to rest by lying against one of the enormous trees. It was so quiet and peaceful in the forest that I soon fell into a deep sleep, forgetting all about the train I should have caught to Strelsau and my luggage that would be waiting at the station.
13. I was just dreaming about living in the Castle of Zenda when a voice woke me: **"Why look at him! It's amazing! He looks just like the King!"** I opened my eyes slowly and found two men looking at me. Both carried guns and were dressed for hunting. One of them was short but looked very tough with light blue eyes, and he looked like a soldier. The other was younger, thin and of medium height, and he looked like a gentleman. I later found out that my guesses were both correct. The older man walked up to me and raised his hat to me politely, so I stood up. **"He's about the same height as the King, too!"** he said. **"This really is extraordinary. What's your name, sir?"** **"Perhaps you can tell me what your names are first?"** I asked them. The gentleman stepped forward with a smile and said, **"Of course. This is Colonel Sapt, and my name's Fritz von Tarlenheim. We both work for the King of Ruritania."** I shook their hands and told them, **"I'm Rudolf Rassendyll. I'm a traveller from England and was an officer in the Queen's army."** **"Well, we're officers for our King, so we understand each other well!"** said Tarlenheim. **"Rassendyll, Rassendyll,"** said Colonel Sapt quietly. **"I know! Are you one of the Burlesdons?"** **"My brother's the new Lord Burlesdon,"** I explained. **"So, do I really look like the King?"** **"You could be twins,"** said Fritz. **"Although you look like identical twins, you do not have identical personalities or skills. You two seem very different. If you were an officer for the Queen's army, Rassendyll, you must be good with a sword!"** laughed Sapt. **"Is the King not a fighting man?"** I asked. **"The King likes to live well,"** said Fritz. **"Let's say he prefers eating to action, but he's a kind man and he's our King. We'd do anything for him."** **"Perhaps we are alike then,"** I said, **"because I like to have an easy life, too!"** At this moment, a voice came from the trees behind us. **"Fritz? Where are you, Fritz?"** Fritz looked worried, and then said quietly to me, **"It's the King! He's coming here now."** A young man then came out from behind a tree in the forest and stood in front of us. As I looked at him, I gave out a loud cry at the same time as he stood back in amazement to see me. Except perhaps for a centimetre or two difference in height, we looked so alike that the King of Ruritania might have been me, Rudolf Rassendyll, and I might have been him, the King of Ruritania.

Chapter 2

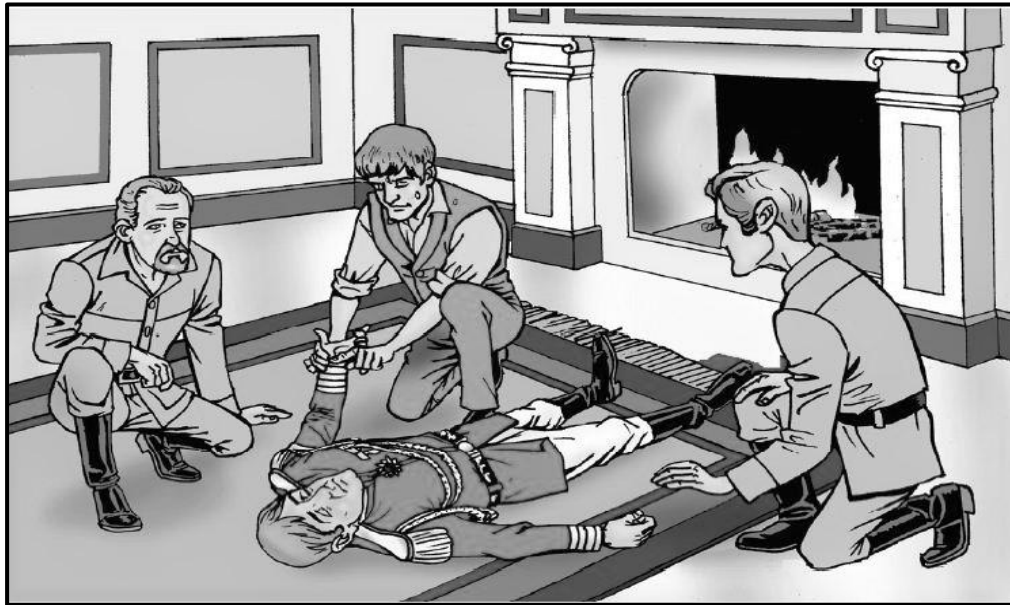
1. It was a very strange feeling for me to be standing in a forest in the middle of Ruritania in front of a person who looked exactly the same as me. For a few minutes, the future King of Ruritania and I stood looking at each other in silence. Then I bowed to him and he finally spoke. **"Colonel, Fritz: who is this gentleman?"** I was about to answer when Colonel Sapt stepped forward and spoke quietly to the King. As the Colonel talked, the King listened patiently, staring at me now and then. While they were talking, I examined him carefully. He certainly looked very like me, although there were some differences: his mouth was perhaps less wide and my face was a little thinner. But in most ways we were identical.



2. Colonel Sapt stopped talking and the King suddenly began to laugh loudly. Then he stepped up to me, still laughing, and said, **"It's good to meet you, cousin! You must forgive me if I seemed surprised, as it's not every day that you see your double!"** **"I hope you're not angry,"** I said. **"Whether I like it or not, you can't help looking like me. No, I'll happily help you. Where are you travelling to?"** **"To Strelsau, sir. To the coronation."** The King looked at the two other men and smiled. **"What would my brother Michael think: if he saw us two together!"** he cried. **"But sir,"** said Fritz von Tarlenheim, **"I don't think it would be a good idea for Mr Rassendyll to visit Strelsau now."** **"Really? What do you think?"** the King asked Colonel Sapt. **"I agree. He mustn't go,"** said the old soldier. **"Don't worry, sir. I understand the problem,"** I said. **"I'll leave Ruritania today."** **"You don't need to go now!"** said the King. **"Please, first you must eat with me tonight. You don't meet a new cousin every day!"** **"Remember, sir, that we have an early start tomorrow,"** said Colonel Sapt. **"We can still eat well,"** said the King, **"and good food is more important than sleep! Now Mr Rassendyll, what's your first name?"** **"The same as yours,"** I answered, bowing again. **"Come, then, cousin Rudolf. I don't have a house here, but I'm staying in the place my brother Michael uses for hunting. It's not the palace that I'm used to, but it will do for a few days."**
3. So I walked with the King for half an hour through the forest, talking happily until we reached a small wooden hunting lodge between the trees. The King's personal servant came out to meet us. The other servant was the mother of Johann, the man who I had met earlier at the inn. **"Is dinner ready yet, Josef?"** the King asked the servant. The servant said it was and showed us into a dining room where a table had been laid out with generous amounts of food. After my walk I was hungry, so I ate a lot and the food was delicious, but I noticed that Colonel Sapt and Fritz von Tarlenheim did not want to eat too much because of the events the next day. **"The Colonel and I have to leave here at six tomorrow morning,"** Fritz explained. **"We ride to Zenda and return with a guard of soldiers to take the King to the station."** **"It's very good of my brother to let me use his guards,"** said the King. **"But Rudolf, forget these two men! We don't need to get up so early, so eat some more, cousin!"** We continued to eat and Josef continued to bring in more food. **"The Duke said I was to give you this at the end of your meal,"** said the servant, putting some cakes in front of us. **"Well done, Michael! He knows me well!"** said the King happily, and he ate the cakes hungrily, as if they were the first thing he had eaten all day. I ate one of the cakes, but I had really eaten enough, and when the King seemed to have finally finished eating, I asked to go to bed. That is all I remember of that evening.



4. The next thing I remember, I woke up suddenly covered in water. I looked up and saw Colonel Sapt standing in front of me, with Fritz von Tarlenheim next to him. **"That wasn't funny,"** I said, when I realised the Colonel had thrown water over me. **"Nothing else would wake you up. It's five o'clock,"** said Sapt. **"Five o'clock? But it's early and ..."** **"Rassendyll,"** said Fritz in a worried voice, **"you must come and look at this."** He took my arm and led me to the next room.



5. The King was lying on the floor. His face was red and he was breathing heavily. **"We've been trying to wake him up for half an hour, but we can't,"** explained Fritz. I bent down and felt his pulse, which was very weak and slow. **"It must've been those cakes that he ate last night! Do you think he was poisoned?"** I asked. **"We don't know,"** said Sapt. **"We must get a doctor."** **"There's no doctor for fifteen kilometres and even a thousand doctors won't make him better today,"** said Fritz. **"But what about the coronation?"** I cried. **"We must tell the people of Ruritania that he's ill,"** said Fritz. **"If he's not crowned today, I don't think he'll ever be King,"** said Sapt. **"But why?"** I asked. **"The whole country's waiting for him today. Most of the army is waiting too, with Duke Michael leading it. They won't be happy,"** said Sapt. **"We must tell everyone what's happened and make the most of it,"** said Fritz, getting up to leave. Sapt stopped him. **"Do you think that he was poisoned?"** he asked me. **"Yes, I do,"** I answered. **"Then who did it?"** **"It must have been Duke Michael!"** Fritz said angrily. **"Yes, he did this so that his brother cannot be crowned,"** continued Sapt. **"You don't know what the Duke is like, do you, Rassendyll? If Rudolf doesn't become King, Duke Michael will take the crown."**

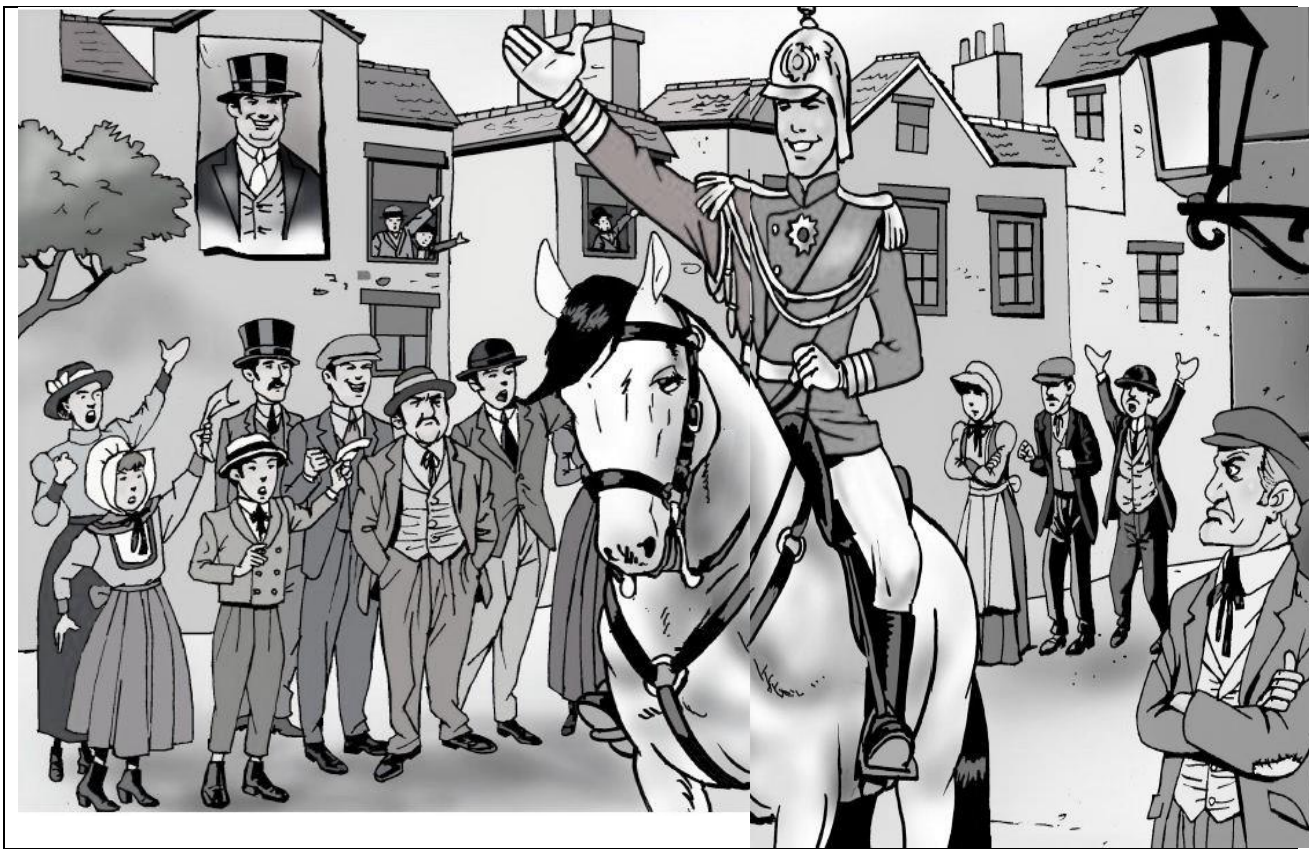
6. We all sat in silence while we thought about what we could do. Then Sapt suddenly stood up. **"I have an idea! It was lucky that we met you yesterday,"** he said excitedly, looking at me, **"because you can go to Strelsau to be crowned!"** **"Me? That's impossible!"** I laughed. **"People would realise that I'm not the King! And don't forget that I'm English!"** **"It would be easy to forget that,"** said Fritz, **"because your German's perfect. And if we dress you in different clothes, no one will know."** **"If you don't go to Strelsau, Duke Michael will be King tonight, and the King will either be dead or in prison,"** said Sapt. **"I understand what you're saying, but the King would never forgive me if I ..."** **"Our country needs this!"** cried Sapt. Standing up, I walked round the room in silence. The clock ticked sixty times, then seventy, eighty. I looked at the poor King lying on the floor and realised I had no choice. Sapt clearly read my expression, because he smiled even before I said quietly, **"Very well, I'll go."**
7. **"We won't wait for Michael's guards but leave for Strelsau at once,"** said Sapt. **"We can hide the King in the cellar so when the guards arrive they'll think no one's here,"** said Sapt. **"What if they search the building?"** asked Fritz. **"Josef will say the hunting lodge is empty,"** said Sapt. **"This is our only chance."** **"How will we get the King to Strelsau?"** I asked. **"Tonight we sleep in the palace,"** said Sapt. **"As soon as we are alone in the King's bedroom, you and I will leave and come back here on our horses. Fritz can stay and guard the King's bedroom in the palace, and I will tell Josef to get the King ready for the journey back. The King will then return to the palace with me in the dark. Meanwhile, you will ride as fast as you can to the border and try to leave the country before it's light. Do we all agree on this plan?"** **"I agree,"** I said. **"It's a good plan,"** said Fritz.
8. Sapt and Fritz picked up the King and began to carry him out of the room, but we realised we were being watched by Johann's mother, who looked at us with a strange expression before walking off. **"I think she heard us,"** said Sapt. **"After we've moved the King, I'll speak to her."** Meanwhile, Josef began to dress me in some of the King's clothes. When Fritz returned, he looked at me and said, **"You know, I think we can do this."** **"What happened to Johann's mother?"** I asked. **"She's locked in the cellar with the King,"** said Fritz. **"Josef will let her out later, after Michael's gone. But I'm sure, when they find that the King is not here, Michael will realise we know about his plan."** **"Let's go,"** said Sapt, returning into the room. **"Is all safe here?"** asked Fritz. **"No, nothing's safe anywhere, but we must do our best,"** answered Sapt. We were now all in uniforms and set off on horses. It was a cool morning and Sapt immediately began to tell me the history of the King's life: of his family, likes, interests, weaknesses, friends and servants. He told me how I should behave in the palace and said he would always be at my side to tell me who the people were that I met.
9. Soon we reached the station. Fritz told the surprised-looking station guard that the King had changed his plans, and we got on the train to the capital. I looked at my watch – or I should I say, the King's watch – and asked Fritz if he thought Duke Michael had found the King. **"I hope not,"** said Fritz. After a short time we passed the towers and buildings of the capital and I could see we were near the station. **"How are you feeling?"** asked Sapt. **"Nervous,"** I replied. **"I'm not made of stone, you know."** **"You'll be fine. But we are an hour earlier than they expect, so there'll be no one to meet us. We must send word to the palace. So meanwhile ..."** **"Meanwhile, I'll have some breakfast!"** I cried. **"The King is hungry!"** Sapt smiled at me, then took my hand. **"Let's hope we're all alive tonight."**
10. The train stopped and I breathed deeply as we stepped out onto the station at Strelsau. A moment later and everything was suddenly busy: men ran up to us, then ran away again, soldiers rode off on horses, other men showed me to the station restaurant. As I ate my breakfast, I could hear music and people cheering **"God save the King!"** in preparation for the coronation. **"God save both Kings,"** said Sapt. When we left the restaurant, we saw that a group of soldiers had arrived to welcome us. It was led by a tall old man whose jacket was covered in medals. **"That is Marshal Strakencz,"** said Sapt, so that I knew who he was: a very important person in the army. The Marshal greeted me and said he was sorry that the Duke could not meet me at the station but that he would see me shortly. I answered as politely and formally as I could, and began to feel less nervous when no one seemed to realise that I was not the real King. But I saw that Fritz was still very nervous when he shook the Marshal's hand.
11. The soldiers led us out of the station, where we got onto horses that were waiting outside. I began to ride through the capital with the Marshal on my right and Sapt on my left. As we were riding, I saw that the city was partly old and partly new. There were wide, modern streets where the rich people lived in big houses. These were the people who had always lived well under the King's father, and who would support the new King because they knew that nothing would change. But behind the modern streets was a very different area that made up the old town. Here thousands of people were crowded into tiny houses which were old and hot in the summer, freezing cold in the winter. These narrow streets were where the city's many poor people lived, and these people did not want things to stay the same. For that reason, they did not like the King and supported Duke Michael, who told them he wanted things to be different and gave them hope for a better future. I knew that this area would not be very safe for me, the King.

12. We continued towards a great square where the palace stood. There were coloured flags and colourful ribbons everywhere and people lined the streets, clapping and cheering. I waved to them as we passed and people threw flowers down from the balconies above me. One flower fell on my horse, so I picked it up and stuck it onto my coat. Seeing me do this, the Marshal looked at me, but I could not tell from his expression whether he was happy or angry. Nevertheless, I smiled happily at the Marshal. I have written "happily" but that is really how I felt. The truth is, at that moment, I really believed that I was actually the King. I looked up and laughed, delighted to see so much colour and so many happy faces. Then I looked again in surprise: there, on a balcony above me, was the proud smile of the traveller on the train, Antoinette de Mauban. As she stared at me, her expression changed. Surely she knew who I was. Surely she would call out, "**That is not the real King!**"



Chapter 3

1. Dressed as the King of Ruritania, I rode on through the streets of Strelsau towards the palace, expecting to hear Antoinette de Mauban tell everyone that I was not really the King. Yet I heard no one calling out, and I did not look back. Perhaps she had not recognised me after all. I heard Marshal Strakencz give an order to his men and we suddenly entered a poor part of the town where the people were loyal to Duke Michael. **"Why have we changed our route?"** I asked the Marshal. **"It's better this way,"** he explained. Surely this way, however, was into a part of town where the people supported Duke Michael? How could this be a better way for the King? I stopped my horse and thought carefully. Perhaps this was the Marshal's plan to test me. **"Tell your soldiers to ride ahead of me,"** I told the Marshal. **"I don't need them or you. You can wait here until I've continued through the old town alone. I want the people who live here to see that their King trusts them."** Sapt looked worried and shook his head. I could see that he thought that this was a very bad idea. Nevertheless, if I was to be a king, I decided I wanted to act like a king. All of my people should like me, not just a few. **"Don't you understand me? Tell your soldiers to go!"** I shouted. The Marshal looked surprised but gave the orders for his soldiers to go ahead, and Sapt's face looked even more anxious. I realised that if I were killed in this part of town, Sapt's position would become very difficult.
2. When all the soldiers were out of sight, I rode on my own through the streets of the old town. Now that I was alone on my horse, I realised how white, how clean my uniform seemed compared to the old buildings around me. The narrow streets were lined with hundreds of people and I could feel their eyes on me. First people talked quietly, but then I started to hear cheering. I was so close to the people in this poor area that I could easily hear what the people were saying about me. **"I'm surprised that he's on his own, but he's taller than I thought,"** said one. **"His skin's very white,"** said another. Although some people smiled and cheered, others were quiet and looked at me angrily. I saw many paintings of the Duke in their windows and I knew what they thought of me. Despite their anger, I reached the outside of the palace safely and I got off my horse. Briefly I saw Sapt, whose expression was one of relief that I was still alive.



3. It was now almost time for the coronation and a group of soldiers led me inside a beautiful building. There were so many people that I did not know who was doing what. But I remember a beautiful young woman with red hair, who I knew was Princess Flavia, and a man with red cheeks, dark eyes and dark hair who I knew must be Michael. When he saw me, his face became white: until that moment, I do not think he realised that the King had come to Strelsau. What can I remember of that coronation that was so important to the future of Ruritania? Very little, except the golden crown being placed on my head and a few other details. I remember the promises I was asked to read out, and the beautiful music that played when someone announced that Rudolf the Fifth was now King of Ruritania. Most of all, I remember being greeted by Duke Michael, whose hands shook with anger when he took my hand in mine, and who would not look at my eyes as he coldly said, **"Congratulations."** However, no one else, not even the Princess, seemed to realise that I was not the real King. So there I stood in the palace for an hour, as if I had always been a king, greeting the many ambassadors and important people who came to see me. I became worried when a man I knew from England, Lord Topham, also came to greet me, but his eyes were so poor that he probably would not have noticed me anyway.

4. It was now time for me to go in a coach around the streets with the Princess. **"When's the wedding?"** I heard someone call, and I wished I had asked Sapt the answer to that very question. At that moment, the Princess looked at me and said, **"Do you know, Rudolf, you look different today? You look more tired and serious, and I think you're thinner. I can't believe that you really have changed today."** **"I think I want to change now that I'm King,"** I replied. **"Perhaps you already have. I heard that you rode through the old town alone,"** she continued. **"That surprised me. The people there must really have appreciated what you did."** I smiled. **"I hope I'll make a good King,"** I said. The coach had now arrived back at the palace and, once inside the building, I took my seat at my own table, next to Duke Michael, with Sapt behind me and Fritz nearby. I felt like a king, but I also thought, where is the real King and what is he doing now?

5. Later that afternoon, I sat down on my bed feeling exhausted. Sapt and Fritz were still by my side, now looking very happy that our plan had been a success. **"That was a day to remember!"** said Fritz. **"I think I'd like to be King for a day. But Rassendyll, you mustn't try too hard. I'm not sure it was a good idea to ride alone through the old town. Duke Michael won't like it if you become too popular with his people, you know."** **"Well, in a few hours, I'll become Rudolf Rassendyll once more,"** I said, remembering that I would be King only until that night. **"Only if you stay alive as long as that,"** said Sapt. **"Michael's had news from Zenda and he's almost certainly planning something. You must leave the country as soon as you can. But you need a permit to leave the city."** **"Who can I get a permit from?"** I asked. **"The King, of course,"** said Sapt, putting on a table a form for me to sign and a paper with the King's signature for me to copy. **"Look, I can pretend to be the King because I look like him,"** I said. **"That doesn't mean I can write like him too!"** **"Oh, it's not hard to copy,"** said Sapt, and he did it easily for me. **"Now, remember our plan. I'll go with you, Rassendyll,"** said Sapt. **"Now, Fritz, you will tell everyone that the King's gone to bed and that he's not to be woken by anybody until nine o'clock tomorrow morning. Do you understand, Fritz? No one."** **"I understand,"** said Fritz. **"Michael may try to visit,"** continued Sapt, **"but you mustn't let him in, even if your life depends on it."** **"I don't need to be told that,"** said Fritz, proudly. **"Here, put on this big coat and hat,"** Sapt said to me. **"Now, are you ready to go?"** **"I'm ready,"** I said.

6. I shook Fritz's hand and set off – not through the door but through a panel in the wall which led to a dark passage. **"In the old King's time, I knew all about this secret passage,"** Sapt explained. I followed Sapt down the long, dark passage which ended in a heavy wooden door. Sapt unlocked it and we went out into a quiet street which ran along the back of the palace gardens. A man was waiting for us with two horses. Without saying anything, we climbed onto the horses and rode away. At that time of the day, the town was busy and full of noise, but we took the quiet back streets. My coat and hat covered my face and hair, and I tried to stay low on the horse so no one would recognise me. **"Take your gun,"** said Sapt. **"You may need it to get through the city gates. They'll all be closed at this time of day."** It was half past six and still light when we reached one of the tall wooden gates through the city walls. Sapt knocked on the gate, and we were very relieved when a few seconds later, a girl of about fourteen appeared. **"My father's not here, I'm afraid. He's gone to see the King,"** she said. **"Your father should have stayed here,"** said Sapt. **"But he told me not to open the gate for anyone,"** said the girl. **"Then you must give me the key to open it,"** said Sapt. **"Here's a form from the King himself. You can show it to your father when he returns."** Sapt then gave the girl the signed form and a coin and took the key from her hand. We quickly opened the gate, led our horses out, and closed it again behind us. **"Now we must move quickly,"** Sapt told me as we got back on the horses.

7. Once we were outside the city, there was little danger, as nearly everyone was in the streets celebrating the coronation. It became a clear night, with a shining moon, and soon we began to talk. **"What do you think the Duke knows about our plan?"** I said. **"I don't know,"** said Sapt. A little later, we stopped at an inn so that our horses could have a drink, and this lost us half an hour. We then continued and had gone around forty kilometres from the city when Sapt suddenly stopped. It was nearly half past nine. **"Listen,"** he cried. **"I can hear something."** Far behind us we could just hear the noise of horses coming towards us. I looked at Sapt and saw worry on his face. **"We're lucky that the wind's blowing towards us so we can hear them. Come on!"** he called, and we set off fast. After some time, we stopped again and could not hear the other horses, so we slowed down and thought we could relax. However, a little farther we stopped once more and this time we heard them. Sapt got off his horse and put his ear to the ground. **"I think there're two horses,"** he said. **"They're about two kilometres behind."** We went on quickly and eventually we reached the tall, dark trees of the forest of Zenda and stopped at a fork in the road. One road went deep into the forest, the other went outside the forest towards the town. **"To the right's our road, to the left's the castle. Now, get off your horse."** **"Get off? But they'll catch us!"** I said. **"Get off your horse!"** he repeated angrily, and I did what he asked. We took the horses into the dark trees and waited quietly where we could see the road, but they (whoever they were) could not see us. I saw that Sapt had a gun in his hand. **"Do you want to see who they are?"** I whispered. **"Yes, and where they're going,"** Sapt answered.
8. Soon we could hear the horses getting nearer and nearer. The moon was full now so we could see the road clearly. **"Here they come!"** Sapt whispered. **"Look, it's the Duke!"** On the road through the forest, I could see the Duke and a strong-looking man who Sapt later told me was Max Holf, brother to Johann who I had seen at the inn. When they reached the fork in the road, they stopped. **"Which way?"** asked Duke Michael. **"I think we should go to the castle where we can learn the truth,"** said Max. **"Why not the hunting lodge?"** said Michael. **"If all's well, why go there? And if all isn't well, I fear there'll be a trap."** The Duke did not move and seemed to be listening. **"I thought I heard something,"** he said quietly. I saw Sapt lift up his gun, but the Duke then said, **"To Zenda, then,"** and they set off once more. I could see that Sapt still held up his gun and was pointing it at the Duke, but although I knew he would have loved to shoot, he realised it would not have helped the King at this moment. He put his gun away once more.



9. We waited silently for ten minutes before we came out from the trees. **"So, he's had news that all is well,"** said Sapt. **"What does that mean?"** I asked. **"I wish I knew,"** said Sapt. **"It's a real puzzle."** We rode on through the forest as fast as our tired horses would allow. We said nothing, and I thought about what the Duke had said. What did "all is well" mean? Was all well with the King? It did not take us long to reach the hunting lodge where we had left the King and quickly jump off our horses. The lodge was dark and quiet and no one came out to meet us. All of a sudden, Sapt took hold of my arm. **"Look there!"** he said, pointing at five or six torn and dirty handkerchiefs on the ground. **"That's what I used to tie up the old woman. Fasten the horses and let's see what's happened."** The front door to the lodge was not locked and we went into the room where I had eaten the night before. Plates and cups were still on the table. **"Come on,"** said Sapt, and we ran down the passage towards the cellar where we had left the King. But the door to the cellar was open. **"So they found the old woman,"** I said. **"I realised that when I saw the handkerchiefs,"** said Sapt. **"Where's Josef and the King?"** I asked. We found another door inside the cellar that was locked, and it took a lot of work to get it open. It was dark inside and completely silent and I could see Sapt was looking very worried. He loved the King and would have hated anything bad to have happened to him. So I told him to stay where he was and went inside the room with a candle. There were a lot of things on the floor of the dark room, as if there had been a fight. I held up the candle and saw spiders on the walls, then, far in one corner, I saw a body. I slowly went back outside the room to tell Sapt what I had seen. **"It's not good news. I'm afraid he's dead,"** I said. **"The King?"** he cried, putting his hand over his mouth. **"No, the body's Josef. The King's not there."**
10. I closed the heavy door behind me and we walked with heavy hearts back from the cellar to the dining room. **"So, they've got the King!"** said Sapt, sitting down heavily with his hands over his face. **"That's why they said that all's well. But when did they find out?"** I asked. **"Michael must've known all day,"** said Sapt. **"What did he think when he met me, then? He knew I was not the real King!"** **"It doesn't matter what he thought then,"** said Sapt. **"What matters is what he thinks now!"** **"We must get back and collect every soldier in Strelsau. Michael will have to be caught before the King is killed."** **"Wait,"** said Sapt. **"We need to think. It must've been the old woman who told them what had happened somehow. I understand now. They came here to kidnap the King and they found him in that room in the cellar. If we hadn't escaped to Strelsau, we would've been killed."** **"So where's the King now?"** I asked. **"I have no idea,"** he said. **"But you could see at the coronation that Duke Michael's really worried. Let's think about how we can worry him a bit more."** A clock in the house struck one as Sapt stood up with a smile, and I could see that he had another plan. **"We'll go back to Strelsau,"** he said excitedly. **"The King will be back in the capital again tomorrow!"** **"How is that possible if we don't know where he is?"** **"We'll go back to Strelsau and continue with the game we started. You've done a good job until now, so why not continue?"** **"Do you mean you want me to be the King again?"** I asked. **"Yes, I do!"** he cried.

Chapter 4

1. It had not been easy to escape from Strelsau and return to the hunting lodge without anyone seeing us, so when Sapt suggested that I return to the capital and continue pretending to be the King, I let him know exactly what I thought. **"You're mad!"** I said to Sapt. **"The plan's too dangerous!"** Walking up to me, Sapt put his hand on my shoulder and then looked deep into my eyes. **"Listen, if you're a man, you can save the King. Go back and pretend to be him."** **"But the Duke knows where the real King is, and all his men know!"** I protested. **"Yes, but they can't say anything,"** said Sapt. **"Listen! We've got them! They can't say anything without showing their guilt. They cannot say, 'This isn't the real King because we've kidnapped him and killed his servant.' Will they say that?"** I realised that Sapt was right. Even if Michael knew who I was, he could not say he knew, but I still had doubts. **"Sapt, surely someone in Strelsau will realise I'm not the real King,"** I said. **"The Princess has already said she thinks the King's changed. She'll certainly realise."** **"Of course it's a risk, but we must have a King in Strelsau, or the city will belong to Michael within twenty-four hours. You must do it, for Ruritania!"** **"What if the King's already dead?"** **"If the real King's already dead, then you shall stay King! But I think the King's still alive, and I don't think they'll do anything to him if you're in the capital. They'd know that you would stay King if they killed him!"**
2. It was a mad plan, even madder than the first plan, which had been a success, but as I listened to Sapt, I saw that it could work. **"I still worry that someone will realise,"** I said again. **"Anything is possible, but come, Rassendyll! Let's go to Strelsau. We'll be caught if we stay here."** **"All right, Sapt, I'll try,"** I said. **"Good man!"** said Sapt. **"I'll go and get the horses."** But seconds later, he came back. **"Look out of the window."** Through the window I could see in the moonlight a big group of men coming down the road from Zenda: four were on horses, another four or five were walking. I knew they must be Michael's men, and they seemed to be carrying spades, coming to the house to hide their evil work. I remembered poor Josef's body and said, **"Sapt, we should make sure that some of those evil men join Josef."** **"Very well,"** said Sapt. **"As a soldier, I've had a lot of fights like this. I'll show you what to do."**
3. We went out of a back door and climbed onto our horses with our swords ready. We could hear the men arrive at the front of the hunting lodge, and one called out, **"Go and get the body."** **"Now!"** cried Sapt, and we drove our horses fast to the front of the building. The men looked shocked to see us and were not prepared. I easily knocked one man off his horse, then hit another big man with my sword as he moved towards me. But there were only two of us and within seconds I realised there were people all around me. Just as I was about to be trapped, I saw a gap between the men and saw my chance to escape. I turned my horse and quickly rode through the gap towards the forest. My horse was fast but as I left, I heard a gun and I was almost shot. I could see Sapt on his horse ahead of me, and went as quickly as I could towards him, waving. Then I heard another shot and felt a terrible pain in my finger. Someone shot again, but now we were too far away for them to hit us. At last I caught up with Sapt, who was breathless but laughing. **"Well done!"** he said. **"That was very brave. Do you think: they saw who you were?"** **"Yes, one of the men said 'It's the King' before I pushed him off his horse."** **"Good!"** said Sapt. **"That will give Michael something to worry about."**



4. After a time, we stopped so that Sapt could put a bandage on my finger, which now hurt badly. We moved on in silence, as quickly as our poor horses were able to, until we arrived at a farm just as the sun was rising on a cold, clear day. I covered my face, saying to the farmer that I had a bad tooth before we asked for food. The farmer was kind and let us rest, but we knew we could not wait for long and soon headed off. Some hours later, we saw the buildings of Strelsau ahead of us. It was about nine o'clock and at this time of day, the city gates were open, so we went back through the gate that we had left from. The streets of the city were very quiet, as most of the people were resting after the celebrations, and we saw almost no one until we were back at the palace. Here, one of Sapt's servants was waiting for us. **"Is all well, sir?"** he asked. **"Yes, Freyler, all is well,"** answered Sapt. **"But the King's hurt?"** he said, seeing my finger. **"It's nothing,"** I said. **"He caught his finger in a door,"** Sapt explained. **"Now remember, say nothing about this. All young men like to ride their horses now and then, so why not the King?"** As the servant led our horses away, Sapt said quietly to me, **"Freyler's a good servant, but sometimes it's best not to trust even the best of men."**

5. Sapt put the key in the secret door and we went back inside the palace, down the passage to the King's room. Back inside, Fritz, who had been asleep, jumped up when he heard us and cried, **"My King, you're safe! I'm so pleased."** He then bowed down in front of me. **"Even Fritz thinks you're the real King!"** laughed Sapt. **"I think we can do this."** **"Oh! Rassendyll?"** said Fritz in surprise. **"But what's happened to your hand? Are you hurt?"** **"It's nothing serious. What's more important is what we have to tell you."** **"What is it? Where's the real King?"** he cried. **"Be quiet, Fritz!"** said Sapt. **"Don't speak so loudly! People will hear us."** Suddenly there was a knock at the door, so Sapt took me by the arm. **"Quick! Go into the bedroom, take your hat and boots off and climb into bed. Cover yourself up so people think you're asleep."** I did as I was told, but a minute later Sapt came into the bedroom and smiled. He introduced me to a polite young gentleman who came up to my bed and told me that he was a servant of Princess Flavia, who had sent him to find out how the King was feeling after the coronation. **"Send her my thanks,"** I said, **"and tell her that I've never felt better in my life."** **"The King's had a good long sleep,"** said Sapt. The servant bowed and left, and I smiled at Sapt. But Fritz still looked very serious. **"Tell me, is the King dead?"** he asked quietly. **"We don't think so,"** I answered. **"But Duke Michael's holding him prisoner."**

6. The next day, it took Sapt three hours to tell me all about the King's duties. It seems that a king's life is quite hard, but a pretend king's life is even harder. At least Sapt stayed with me to tell me what I ought to do and what I ought not to do, and what I should say to the many important people I had to meet during the day. I was worried when I met the French ambassador and he asked me a question which I could not answer, but later Sapt told me that I should not worry, as the real King would not have been able to answer either. I also had to tell everyone that I could not write because of my finger, so many important documents were not completed. After many hours of meetings, I was finally alone with my friends once more. I asked a new servant, who had never met the real King, for a drink and then asked Sapt if I could rest at last. I was not used to such hard work. **"Rest? No! We mustn't waste any time! Shouldn't we plan how to attack Michael?"** asked Fritz. **"Let's take things slowly,"** said Sapt. **"So aren't we going to do anything?"** said Fritz. **"We aren't going to do anything dangerous,"** answered Sapt. **"If people find out who I am,"** I said, **"then I'll fight with the Duke. But at the moment, let's wait to see what the Duke does."** **"He'll kill the King,"** said Fritz. **"He won't,"** said Sapt. **"If he kills the King, he knows that Rassendyll will stay as King instead. And he cannot accuse Rassendyll of anything because then people will know that he's kidnapped the King."** **"And we cannot accuse him in public without admitting that I'm not the real King,"** I explained. **"So no one can do anything! It's a stalemate!"** cried Fritz.

7. **"But wait. Half of Michael's Six Men are in Strelsau with the Duke,"** said Fritz. **"Only half? Then that means the other half are guarding the King,"** said Sapt. **"Yes, you're right,"** said Fritz. **"So that means the King must be alive. If the King were dead, all the Six Men would be here with the Duke."** **"Excuse me, but who are the Six Men?"** I asked. **"Unfortunately I fear you'll soon be meeting them,"** said Fritz. **"They're six special soldiers who Michael keeps in his house at all times. They're completely loyal to him. Three are from Ruritania, one is Belgian, one French, and one's from your country."** **"They'll do whatever Michael asks them to do,"** continued Sapt. **"Would they try to kill me?"** I asked nervously. **"Without a doubt. Which three are here in Strelsau, Fritz?"** asked Sapt. **"The three foreigners: De Gautet, Bersonin and Detchard."** **"So they were not the men we saw at the hunting lodge?"** I asked. **"I wish they were,"** said Sapt, **"because then there'd only be four and not six of them."**

8. I now decided that I should act – perhaps like all real kings do – by keeping some secrets even from the people I could trust the most. My plan was to make myself as popular as I could, and say nothing bad about Michael. In this way, I could hope to stop the poorer people of Strelsau from thinking badly about me. Then, if there were a fight, perhaps people would not want to follow Michael, although of course I hoped there would not be such a fight. Perhaps I could actually enjoy my game in Strelsau and something good would come from it. Michael would not grow stronger while the game lasted. My plan began the next day, when I rode my horse through the park with Fritz and waved to everyone who bowed to me. The more my people saw of me, the more they would realise I cared about them and their lives. I was not going to be a distant king who people only heard about. And as I had done before the coronation, I wanted to be seen most in the old town, where most of the poor people lived. Riding through some of the narrowest and oldest town streets, I stopped to buy flowers from a poor young girl with a gold coin. This attracted a lot of interest, and soon hundreds of people were following me on my way to the home of Princess Flavia. I knew the Princess was very popular and the people seemed very pleased that I had gone to see her. Moreover, if I had the support of the Princess, this could only help me. Fritz also thought this was a good idea and came with me on my visit to the Princess's palace. I was shown into a guest room full of enormous mirrors, paintings and beautiful furniture, and soon the Princess arrived with her servants. I knew that I had to be very careful when I talked to the Princess. I needed the Princess to trust me, but I did not want to say too much to her, or she would realise I was not the real King. And although I wanted to show her that I trusted her, she must not think she could say what she liked to me, because I was not the man she thought I was.



9. "You have completely changed since you became King, sir," she said. "You need not call me 'sir'," I told her. "For after all, we are still cousins." She looked at me, then said, "I'm proud to do so, Rudolf. But I think your face has changed." I needed to talk about something else, so I said, "My brother's back in the city, I hear. He went away for a while, didn't he?" "Yes, I hear he's back in Strelsau." "That's good. The nearer he is to me, the better." The Princess looked at me. "Do you want him to be near you so that you know what he's doing?" "I'd like him to be near me because he's my half-brother. We're family!" I answered. "We need to help and support each other. Unfortunately, I've heard he can't stay in Strelsau for very long." She looked at me strangely when I said this, but at that moment there was a loud cheer from the streets outside. The Princess ran to the window, then she turned to me, looking anxious. "It's him!" she said. "It's the Duke of Strelsau! He's coming here now." I was surprised by this news and did not know what to say. For several minutes, Princess Flavia and I sat in silence. Her servants also stood silently, with their heads bowed. We could hear steps outside the door and I expected Michael to enter, but then the steps stopped, so we continued to talk again. I cannot remember what we talked about, but I found it very easy to talk to the Princess and time passed.

10. I thought it was strange that Michael had not come into the room, but we did not talk about him at all until the Princess suddenly jumped up and said, **"You do know that Michael will be very angry. Is that a good idea?"** **"What do you mean? How am I making him angry?"** I asked. **"You haven't asked him to come in. He's been waiting outside the room for a long time."** **"But of course he can come in,"** I said, realising I had made a serious mistake. **"How funny you are,"** she said. **"You know that no one can enter without your permission."** **"Of course,"** I said. **"I'd forgotten!"** But the Princess looked at me in a way that made me think she realised something was wrong. **"I was never very good at remembering all the rules,"** I continued, wishing that Fritz had told me about this, **"but I'll go and get him myself at once."** I opened the door and went out of the guest room to greet Michael. He was sitting at a table looking very angry. All his men were standing next to him. I held out my hand and Michael stood up slowly and took it, then I showed him into the Princess's guest room. **"Brother,"** I said, **"I'm so sorry. I didn't know you were waiting, otherwise I'd have asked you in sooner."** He thanked me, but coldly. Michael did not seem to be good at hiding his feelings, and I could see that he was angry with me. I could also see he was trying to pretend that he thought I was the real King.
11. We sat down with the Princess. **"You've hurt your hand,"** he said. **"Yes, an animal bit me,"** I explained. **"It'll be fine."** **"Is there any danger from the bite?"** Flavia asked. **"Not from this,"** I said looking at Michael, **"but if I gave him the chance to bite again, it would be different."** **"Did you kill the animal?"** Flavia asked. **"No,"** I said. **"We're waiting to see if his bite's poisonous."** **"And if it is?"** said Michael, smiling coldly, clearly understanding who I was really talking about. **"He'll be knocked on the head,"** I said. **"But he might bite again,"** said Michael. **"I'm sure he'll try,"** I replied, smiling. Then, worried that Michael would say something I did not want to hear, I decided to change the subject. I told him how fine his soldiers were and thanked him for the splendid coronation. I thanked him for the great time I had had at the hunting lodge in the forest. When he heard this, he jumped to his feet and angrily walked towards the door. Then he stopped and said, **"Three of my friends would very much like to meet you, sir. They're waiting outside."**
12. So I walked up to Michael and took his arm and we entered the outside room like best friends. Michael asked the three men to come forward. **"These gentleman are the most loyal and honest of the King's servants, and are my great friends."** **"I'm very pleased to meet them,"** I said. They bowed before me one at a time: first De Gautet, a tall, thin French man with straight hair; then Bersonin, the Belgian, who was large and about thirty years old; and finally Detchard, the Englishman, who had a thin face, strong shoulders and very short hair. He looked like a good fighter and a bad character. I spoke to him in English with a pretend foreign accent, and I am sure I saw him smile when I spoke. So, Detchard knows my secret, I thought. And if he knew, surely all the Six Men knew as well. How dangerous were these special soldiers? And how safe was I, even in the palace of Strelsau?

Chapter 5

1. I was not sorry to say goodbye to my brother and his soldier friends, although I was sad to say goodbye to the Princess. Should I tell her the truth? Was I wrong to pretend to be the King? I did not know. **"Rudolf, be careful, won't you?"** the Princess said. **"Be careful of what?"** I asked. **"I can't say. But think what your life means to the people of Ruritania,"** she said. I remembered what Rose had said about my brother Robert back in England: "He realises his position in society brings with it responsibilities." I had always wanted to have a quiet life, but I suddenly realised how many responsibilities I now had here in Ruritania. How on earth had I got myself into such a situation?
2. Over the next few weeks, I am pleased to say that no one seemed to notice I was not the real King of Ruritania. Because I looked so like the King, it was much easier for me to pretend to be him than to pretend to me by neighbour at home, for example. I learnt a lot about how a country is run, but I made mistakes, sometimes big ones. I became very good at pretending I had forgotten rules or people that I had met, and I hoped my growing popularity with the people of Ruritania would help them to forgive my occasional bad decisions. One day, Sapt came into my room. **"Here's a letter for you,"** he said. **"From the writing, I think it's from a woman. I also have some important news."** **"What is it?"** I asked. **"We now know that the King's at the Castle of Zenda,"** he said. **"How do you know this?"** **"We asked where the rest of the Six Men were, and found out that they are all there at the castle: Lauengram, Krafstein and young Rupert Hentzau, the three biggest criminals in Ruritania."** **"Do you think the King's definitely there?"** I asked. **"Almost certainly. The three men are always at the castle, and people say the drawbridge is nearly always kept up. That is not normal. No one goes into the building without the permission of Rupert or Michael."** **"Then I must go to Zenda,"** I said. **"That wouldn't be a good idea."** **"If not today, then soon. I must go there."** **"You'll probably stay there forever if you do,"** said Sapt. I was silent and I could see that Sapt was studying my face. **"What's worrying you, Rassendyll?"** he asked. **"Tell me, Sapt, why is it that wherever I go in the capital, I'm followed by six people?"** **"Because I've ordered them to follow you."** **"But why?"** **"It would be very useful for Michael if you disappeared. And if you disappear, the game's over."** **"I don't need such help,"** I protested. **"I can look after myself."** **"De Gautet, Bersonin and Detchard are in Strelsau, and anyone of them could catch you easily,"** he said, as if I were a child.
3. **"So, what's that letter?"** said Sapt, pointing at the one he had given me. I opened it and read it aloud:

If the King wants to know something important, please do what I ask. At the end of New Avenue, there is a house in a large garden. There is a wall around the garden with a gate at the back. At midnight tonight, go through the gate where you will see a statue of a horse, turn right and walk twenty metres. There you will find six steps up to a summer house. Go into this summer house and someone will tell you something very important about your life. But you must be alone. If you do not come, your life will be in danger. I am a loyal friend to you. Do not show this letter to anyone, or it will put a woman in great danger: Michael will punish me.

"Yes, and Michael can also write a very good letter," said Sapt. I thought the same: surely Michael had written this letter to trap me. I was about to throw the letter in the bin, when I saw that there was more writing on the other side.

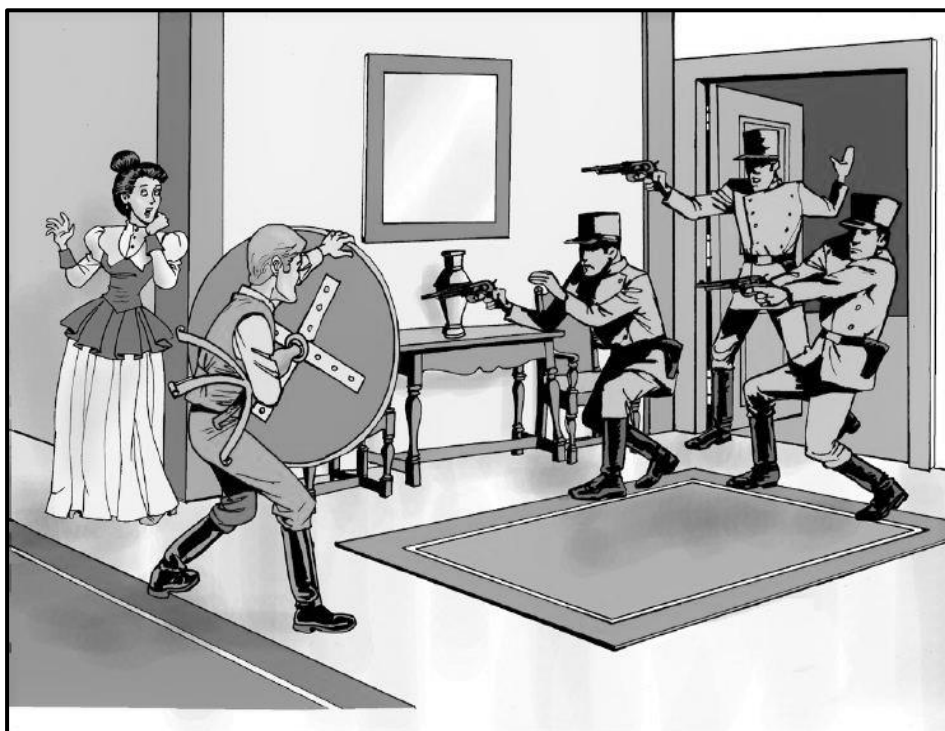
If you do not believe me, ask Colonel Sapt. "What?" said the Colonel, so I read on. *Ask him what woman has been a guest of the Duke. Ask if her name begins with A.*

"It must be Antoinette de Mauban," I cried. **"How do you know?"** asked Sapt, and I told him all I knew about the woman. **"I've heard that she came to Ruritania with her servants as a guest of Michael,"** Sapt said. **"People say she had a great argument with Michael, and now she's staying somewhere in Strelsau."** **"So she could be useful to us,"** I suggested. **"Perhaps she would be useful if she had information about Michael. However, I believe that Michael wrote that letter,"** said Sapt. **"So do I, but I'm not certain,"** I said. **"I'll go to the house tonight."** **"No, you mustn't,"** said Sapt. **"Let me go instead."** **"You can come too, but you must wait outside the gate when I go in alone."** **"I don't believe this woman and you're mad to go!"** said Sapt. **"I believe this woman, and I will go,"** I said. **"Either I go to the house, or I go back to England. We don't have much time. Every day we leave the King imprisoned there's more danger. We must move quickly,"** I said. Sapt was beginning to know when he could tell me what to do and when he could not. So reluctantly he agreed with me.

4. At half past eleven that night, we got on our horses and soon arrived outside the gate to the house, carrying our guns. It was a very dark night. **"I'll wait for you here, outside the gate,"** said Sapt. **"Good luck."** I opened the gate and I found myself in a leafy garden. I saw the statue of the horse and walked across the garden with the gun in my hand. I followed the directions given in the letter and, although it was dark, I soon arrived at the summer house. When I went inside, I heard a woman's voice. **"Shut the door,"** the woman whispered. I did as she asked and then looked around the room, which was lit by a small candle. It was almost empty except for a small iron table and two chairs. In the soft

light, I could just see Antoinette in front of me and her servant behind. "We have little time," Antoinette said. "Listen! I know who you are and I know you're not the King. You're Mr Rassendyll. I wrote that letter to you at the Duke's orders. In twenty minutes, three men will be here to kill you." "Or I'll kill them! I suppose they're three of the Duke's Six Men?" "Yes, you must leave here before they arrive, so listen carefully! The plan is to kill you and to take your body into the old town. It'll be found and Michael will arrest Colonel Sapt and Captain Fritz von Tarlenheim for murdering you. Then a messenger will be sent to Zenda and the real King will be murdered too. The Duke will then become King. Do you understand?" "Oh, yes, I understand. It's a clever plan. But why are you helping me?" "I don't like to see people being killed. Now go. But remember, you're never safe in this city. You have guards following you, don't you? Well, Michael's men are following them. If you're alone, then you'll die. Now go quietly this way past the summer house for about a hundred metres. There you'll find a ladder against the wall. Climb it and run as fast as you can." "And what will you do?" "I also have a game to play. I'll tell the Duke's men that you never came. If the Duke doesn't find out what I've done, we may meet again." "Thank you. You've helped the King tonight," I said. "But before I go, tell me something: Do you know where he is in the castle?" "Yes, I do know. Inside the castle there's a door on the right, and behind that – but listen! They're here! It's too late for you to escape!"

5. I looked through a gap in the summer house door and saw three men standing outside. Then I heard a voice, which spoke in English: "Are you in there, Mr Rassendyll?" I did not answer. "We want to make you an offer," the voice said. "Will you let us in?" "Do not trust them," said Antoinette quietly. "Stand outside and talk," I called. "I won't let you in." "That's a good idea," said the voice, who I thought must be Detchard. "Is that Mr Detchard?" I asked. "Our names are not important. We can offer you a safe journey to the border and fifty thousand English pounds," he continued. "That sounds a generous offer," I said, but of course I did not trust them at all. "Give me a minute to think." Then I told Antoinette and her servant to stand close to the wall, away from the door. "What are you going to do?" Antoinette asked. "You'll see." I picked up the iron table and held it by the legs so it was in front of me. Then I said, "Gentlemen, I'd like to accept your kind offer. Perhaps you can open the door for me." "Why don't you open the door yourself?" said Detchard. "Very well, but it opens outwards," I explained. "You'll need to step back or the door will hit you." I pretended to try and open the door, and called out, "I can't open it." "Then I'll open it," called Detchard. As Detchard was walking up to the door, I moved quietly to the back of the summer house. It took him a few seconds to open the door, but as soon as he did, I ran at him as fast as I could holding the table in front of me. There was a terrible noise as all three men fired their guns at once, but I was protected by the table top. The men were all standing on the steps up to the summer house, so as I ran out, the table top hit them and they all fell down the steps. Before I knew what was happening, I too was falling down the steps, but as I was on top of the men, I managed to get up fastest and run away, firing my gun behind me. There were angry shouts and more shots. I remembered what Antoinette had said about a ladder and soon found it and climbed over the wall in seconds. Running along the outside of the wall, I heard more shots but realised they were being fired by Sapt, who was trying to get into the gate. "Sapt! It's me, let's go!" I shouted. "You're safe!" he cried in surprise. "I have a fine story to tell you about a table!" I told him, as we jumped on our horses and rode quickly back to the palace.



6. The next day, Sapt read me the latest report from the Chief of Police. "Some interesting things have been happening this morning," said Sapt. "The police report says that the Duke of Strelsau left the capital by the road to Zenda. An hour later, he was followed by De Gautet, Bersonin and Detchard, who had a bandage around his arm," I was pleased that my shot the night before had been a good one. "Finally, listen to this: the people of the capital are not happy that the King has yet to marry the Princess. Some people say that if they do not marry soon, it would be better if the Princess married the Duke of Strelsau. However, the King is having a ball tonight for the Princess." "I don't know anything about a ball," I said. "Oh, it has all been prepared," said Fritz, "by me." "Listen," said Sapt. "You must ask the Princess to marry you tonight." "I can't do that," I said. "It wouldn't be fair to the Princess."

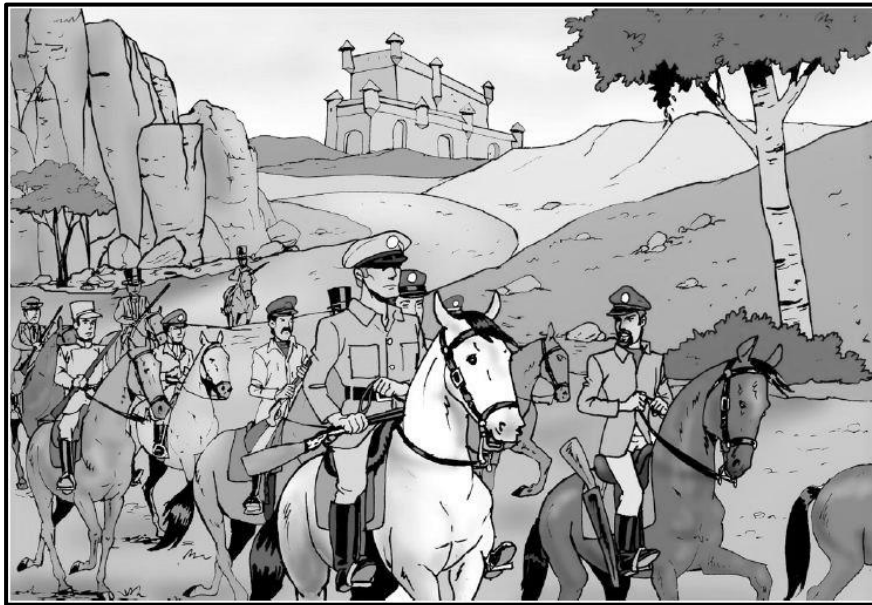


7. That evening, the ball was a great success. After we had eaten, I sat with the Princess and some of my other guests in a small room by the palace gardens. The servants brought us coffee and we had time to talk. "You've been King for a few weeks now," said the Princess, "Everyone says you've done a very good job. I'm very pleased for you." "You know, someone once said to me, 'a person who has a position in society has responsibilities.' Recently I've realised how true this is." "Haven't you always thought that?" asked the Princess. "No, when I was younger, I didn't think I needed to worry about society, I thought that was someone else's job," The Princess looked very surprised. "But you always knew that you would become King. How could you think that was someone else's job?" Once again, I had made a mistake in what I said. But suddenly, instead of saying something to cover up my mistake, I wanted to tell the Princess the truth. She was kind and clever and she was going to marry the King. She should know what had happened to her future husband, and she should know all about my game. I decided I had to tell her everything. "Flavia," I said quietly, so none of the other guests could hear, "there's something you should know. I'm not really ..." But I never finished the words I wanted to say because at that moment, we heard footsteps in the garden outside the room. I looked up and jumped with fright, because a face suddenly appeared at the French window. I relaxed when I saw that the person looking in on us was Sapt. "I apologise, but there's someone who wants to see you, sir," he said to me, but I could tell from his eyes that he was angry. How long had he been listening to my conversation with the Princess? Had he heard that I was about to tell her the truth about who I really was? We returned to the ball where the Princess went quickly away with her servants and I was welcomed by other important people at the ball. I realised then that my game had gone too far to go back: I could not tell anyone who I really was or they would think I was mad. Sapt had stopped me from saying too much to the Princess, and Sapt's plan really was working.
8. The next morning, Sapt and I sat in my room thinking about what to do next. "Do you realise," I said, "that everyone really thinks I'm the King, even the Princess? I could even arrange for the Duke and the real King to be killed." "This is all true," said Sapt. "So will you do such a thing?" "Of course not. I shouldn't be here, pretending to be anything. It isn't fair for the people of Ruritania and it isn't fair for the Princess, either. We can't wait any longer," I said. "We must go to Zenda and rescue the King." "You're a good man," said Sapt.

9. First, however, I needed to see Princess Flavia again. If I could not tell her the truth, I could at least warn her that the situation in Ruritania was not as good as she believed it to be. I visited her in her palace later that day, and she asked her servants to bring me some coffee. Then she told me that she had received two letters. One was from Michael, who had invited her to visit Zenda. Then she showed me the other letter. **"I don't know who this one's from,"** she said. I immediately knew who it was from: the writing was the same as the letter I had received. It was from Antoinette de Mauban and it read: You do not know me, but I do not want you to fall into the power of the Duke. Do not accept any invitation from him and do not go anywhere without many guards. Show this letter, if you can, to the leader of Ruritania. **"Why does it say 'the leader' and not 'the King'?"** she asked. **"You must do as the letter says,"** I said, not answering her question. **"I'll order guards to watch you."** **"Do you know who sent this?"** she asked. **"A friend of mine. Today you must say you're ill so you can't go to Zenda."** **"So you don't mind making Michael angry?"** she asked. **"I don't mind anything if you're safe,"** I said.
10. I had an idea about who would be the best guard for Princess Flavia, and I immediately visited Marshal Strakencz, who I knew I could trust. I asked him to guard the Princess and not to allow any of the Duke's men to visit her. I told him I was worried about the Duke's ambitions, and he did not look surprised. **"I'm leaving Strelsau for a few days,"** I told him. **"Every evening, I'll send you a message. If you don't get a message for three days, you have the authority to say that you are now the head of Strelsau. You must then ask the Duke to allow you to see the King. If he doesn't allow you to see the King in twenty-four hours, you must say that the King's dead. Then you must tell the people of Ruritania who their new ruler will be. You do know who that will be?"** **"Princess Flavia, of course,"** he answered.

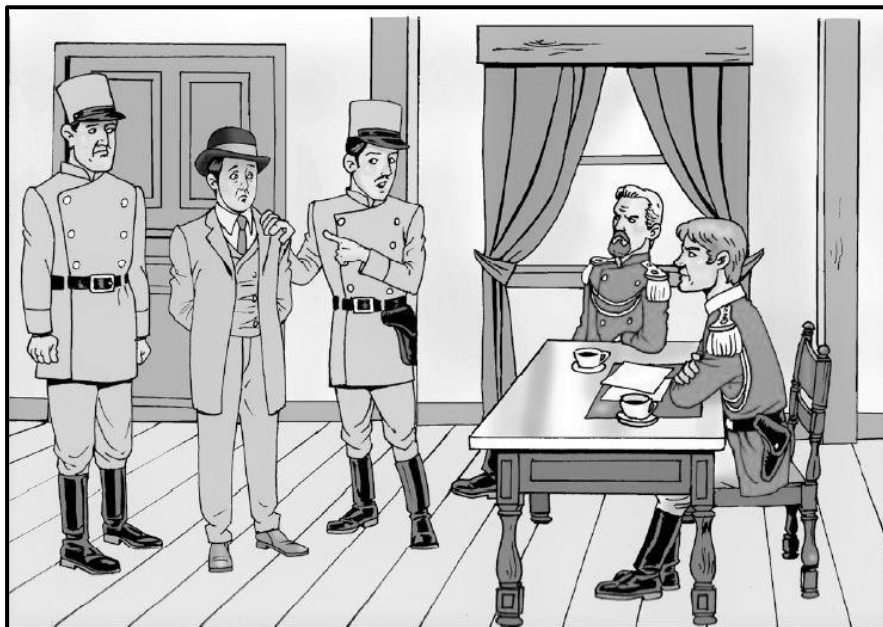
Chapter 6

1. It was nearly time for us to make a move against Duke Michael. I was with Marshal Strakencz who I had to trust to keep the future of Ruritania safe. **"You must promise that you'll protect Princess Flavia from the Duke,"** I told him. **"As you know, his mother was not royal and he can only legally become King if he marries the Princess."** **"I promise,"** Marshal Strakencz said, bowing. **"Now I'll write down what I've just said. But my finger still hurts."** **"Yes, sir,"** he said, watching me write. **"The writing's a little different from your usual. I hope people know it's a real order from the King."** **"I trust you,"** I told him and he smiled. "The Princess will be safe with me," he said.
2. I returned to the palace and told Sapt and Fritz to get ready to go to Zenda. There was only one thing left for me to do before we went. I went to tell Flavia that I was leaving Strelsau to go hunting. **"So you'd prefer to hunt animals than do your duties in the capital?"** she asked quietly. **"The thing I hunt is a very big animal,"** I explained. **"Because I'll be hunting Michael."** The Princess looked very worried. **"This'll be dangerous!"** she said. **"If I don't come back, you must become Queen for me."** She then stood tall and said, **"I don't really know what's going on, but I'll do whatever is right for Ruritania. If that means becoming the Queen, then so be it."** **"Thank you,"** I said. **"Let us hope that it's not necessary."** I knew, however, that this was more than possible.
3. About eight kilometres from Zenda, on the opposite side of the town to where the castle stands, there is a leafy wood on a low hill. On top of the hill is a large, modern country house called Tarlenheim which belongs to a relative of Fritz. He does not often visit the house, so when Fritz asked if we could use it for a hunting trip, he happily agreed. So the next day, Sapt, Fritz and I set off from the capital and arrived at the country house at about midday, with a large party of servants and ten brave and strong gentlemen that I trusted. We had told these men that Michael had tried to kill me and that a good friend of the King's was held prisoner in the castle. They knew it was our job to set him free, and being brave and loyal, they did not need to ask any more questions.



4. However, it did not take long for Duke Michael to hear about our arrival, and after only an hour, we were visited by three of his famous Six Men: the Ruritaniens Lauengram, Krafstein and Rupert Hentzau. I am sure they knew that we were not really there to hunt animals but had a much bigger plan. The youngest and strongest of the three, Rupert Hentzau, told us how sorry the Duke was that we could not stay in his mansion, but unfortunately the Duke and many of his servants had a dangerous illness, so it was best if we stayed away. His speech was formal and polite, but I did not believe a word he said. **"I'm sorry to hear this,"** I said to them. **"I hope my brother feels better soon. And what of your friends De Gautet, Bersonin and Detchard? I heard that Detchard was injured?"** Rupert smiled at me and said, **"You needn't worry, Detchard will be fine."** **"Good. Perhaps you would like to stay and eat with us?"** I said. **"You're very kind,"** said Rupert, **"but unfortunately we have important duties and need to get back to the castle."** **"Of course you do,"** I laughed. **"Thank you for coming. I look forward to seeing you all again."** When they had gone, Sapt said, **"That Rupert's the worst criminal of them all!"**

5. That evening, I set off for Zenda with Fritz. Our journey, we knew, could be a dangerous one, but my face was covered and we felt safe because there were many people on the roads. We did not go near the castle, however, but went to the inn where I had stayed on my first night in Ruritania. **"I've been here before,"** I told Fritz. **"Won't they recognise you, then?"** he said. **"Of course. Just do as I say and everything will be fine."** I kept the coat over my face as we entered the inn and we asked to have a meal in a quiet room at the back. When the owner's daughter brought us our food, I uncovered my face so she could see me. **"You're the King!"** she cried, almost dropping our plates. **"I remember you when you stayed with us. I told my mother you weren't really an Englishman and that you were the King! I'm sorry if we said anything bad when you stayed with us."** **"I'll forgive you if you promise to help us,"** I said. I explained that I wanted to see Johann. **"He never comes here any more,"** she explained. **"He works at the castle now."** **"But you're still friends and you must ask to see him,"** I told her. **"Tell him to meet you tomorrow night at ten o'clock, then bring him to our house. And tell no one that you've seen the King. Do you understand?"** **"You won't hurt him, will you, sir?"** **"Not if he does as we ask,"** I promised.
6. She agreed happily, and after our meal we returned to Tarlenheim late that night. As we got off our horses, Sapt ran out of the house and cried, **"So you're safe!"** **"We're fine. Why shouldn't we be?"** **"It seems that it's dangerous to ride in this area unless you're in a large group. One of our men, Bernenstein, went out alone in the woods today. He saw three men in the trees and one shot him. He's upstairs in bed with a bullet in his arm. The next bullet could be for you."** We thought that we would be safe in the country house, but I was wrong. The next day, I was resting in the living room when Rupert visited the house alone. **"I have a message for you, Rassendyll,"** he said. **"If you do not know how to address the King, my brother must find another messenger,"** I replied coldly. **"Why do you continue to pretend?"** he laughed. **"We all know who you are."** **"But you can't say that in public, can you? Because then people would know you've kidnapped the real King. You know the game's not finished yet, and until it is, I will choose my own name,"** I said. **"So, what is your message?"** **"The Duke offers you more than I would. He offers you a safe journey to the border and a million gold pieces."** **"Tell the Duke that I refuse his generous offer. How's his prisoner, by the way?"** **"He's still alive,"** said Rupert. **"Good, now go from here, while you can,"** I said. Rupert gave me a cold look and asked his servant to prepare his horse. I followed him out of the house, and just as he was about to climb on his horse, he stopped and said, **"Let's shake hands."** He stepped nearer to me and suddenly stabbed me in the shoulder with his knife. I cried out, but Rupert rode off fast before I could do anything. Although my shoulder hurt, I was lucky it was not a bad injury, though I was angry at letting myself fall for such a trick.
7. I was put to bed and told to sleep, which I did for several hours. When I woke up, it was dark and I found Fritz beside me. **"The doctor says your arm will soon be better,"** he said. **"And the good news is that your plan has worked, for the girl's brought Johann to the house. He's downstairs right now, and the strange thing is that I think Johann's happy to be here,"** said Fritz. **"He seems to know that if Michael's plan is successful, he'll be in trouble because he knows too much."** This made me think that Johann would be more useful to us than I had first thought. Surely with the right encouragement, he would make the perfect spy for us? I went downstairs and asked to see Johann. The guards had brought him in with his hands tied behind his back. I sat him down in a chair, where he sat looking sad and afraid. As we talked to him, we understood that Johann was a weak man but not a wicked one. He said he worked for Michael because he was afraid of him not because he liked him, and he seemed happy to tell me Michael's secrets.



8. He told us that there were two small rooms inside the castle, which you could only reach by crossing the drawbridge. The rooms were cut into the rock below the ground. One room had no windows, so it was always lit by candles. Behind it was a second room with a small window, where the King was kept in chains. From the window, a large stone pipe led down to the castle moat. The first room was always guarded by three of the Six Men. They were told that, if some people attacked the first room and it was in danger of being taken, Detchard should go into the other room and kill the King. The body would then be put down the pipe and the weight of his chains would keep the body under water. Calling out to the other men, Detchard would then escape down the same pipe and swim across the moat. The other two men would then follow him and the Duke's horses would take them to safety. So anyone searching the castle would find nothing: just an empty room. **"What if many men attacked the castle?"** I asked. **"They have another plan,"** he explained. **"If the castle's attacked by a large group of soldiers, they would do the same thing, but one of the Six Men would take the King's place. So when Michael arrived at the castle, he could say that he was only keeping one of the Six Men as prisoner because he'd been rude to Antoinette de Mauban. No one would believe that the King was ever there."**
9. **"It's a very clever plan,"** said Sapt angrily. **"It means that if we attack the castle quietly and secretly, or openly with a great army, the King will still be dead before we can save him. Rassendyll, I think that this time next year, you'll still be King."** My pulse quickened at the thought of remaining King forever. But without proving that Michael had killed the real King, the Duke would still be there, in his castle, waiting for his opportunity to take my place. I would never be safe. **"Does the King know about Michael's plan?"** I asked Johann. **"Yes, and so does my brother, Max. He helped to put up the pipe to the prison window. It's not easy to sleep at the Castle of Zenda because no one feels safe. Everyone in it is a criminal, except the King."** **"Thank you, Johann,"** I said to him. **"You can go back to the castle now. If anyone asks you if there is a prisoner in the castle, you can say there is. But if anyone asks you who the prisoner is, do not answer. We can help you if you keep your promises, otherwise you'll never be safe again."** Johann bowed to me as he left. We hoped he could be trusted. **"So, what are we going to do now?"** asked Sapt. I thought long and hard. **"There are two ways in which the King can come out of Zenda alive,"** I said. **"One is if we have a miracle, and the other is if one of the Duke's men betrays him."**

Chapter 7

1. The next day, three pieces of news arrived at the Tarlenheim country house where we were staying. The first was that people of Strelsau had heard I was badly injured while I was hunting in the woods, and they were worried. Secondly, the Duke also thought I was badly injured, although he understood better how I had got my injury. I heard this from Johann, who I now trusted and had allowed to go back to Zenda. Thirdly, Marshal Strakencz told me that Princess Flavia had ordered him to take her to see me. When the Princess arrived at Tarlenheim, she was relieved to see that my injury was not serious. However, Johann told us shortly afterwards that the King was looking weak and ill, and we realised that we had to do something quickly. We could not wait any longer or he would surely die. It was perhaps the strangest thing in the history of any country, that the King's brother and a pretend King, near a quiet country town during a time of peace, acted out a war for the life of a sick King, with just a few people knowing about it.
2. That night, after Princess Flavia had gone to bed, I changed my clothes and went outside to join Sapt and Fritz with seven men. We all had weapons and we rode our horses into a wet, windy night, taking a quiet back road towards the Castle of Zenda. It took us about an hour to get there. A few hundred metres from the castle, we asked the seven men to wait with the horses while we continued on foot up the hill to the moat around the castle. Here, Sapt tied a rope to a tree and I took off my boots, using the rope to climb down into the water. Although the night was windy and wet, it had been a warm and sunny day and the water was not cold, and I swam without difficulty round the castle walls. I could hear voices inside the castle, but it was so dark that I did not think anyone could see me. I remembered what Johann had told me and thought I must now be near to the window to the King's room. Then I saw the giant pipe that led from his window to the moat, and I was about to go nearer when I heard a noise. I now saw there was a boat next to the pipe, and in the boat was a guard carrying a large gun. I went up to the boat as quietly as I could, then I saw that the guard was Max Holf, the brother of Johann. He was breathing slowly and deeply and I saw that he was asleep. I swam slowly and silently up to him and, though I hated to do it, this was war, so I stabbed him to death.



3. Now I had time to look carefully at the pipe. I soon realised that the bottom of the pipe was not fastened to the wall and I could see light coming from its far end. I tried to push it, and although the pipe was very heavy, it moved just a little. Then I heard voices: one was the King, and the other was a man with an English accent. It was Detchard. **"Time for your sleep,"** said the Englishman. **"Why doesn't my brother kill me now?"** said the King in a weak voice. **"The Duke doesn't want you to die, not yet anyway. Sleep well!"** said Detchard. Then the light disappeared and I could hear a door being locked. Now all I could hear was the King, quietly crying.

4. I realised nothing more could be done that night, so I climbed in the boat with Max dead at the bottom and rowed back to the rope. The wind was blowing hard now, so I did not worry that anyone would hear the boat. When I arrived next to the rope, I tied it round Max's body and asked Sapt to pull it up. Then I climbed back to my friends. Sapt whistled for our seven men to come and get us with their horses, but as they got nearer, we heard several shots and loud cries, and then a voice callout, **"They've got me, Rupert! There are seven of them. Save yourself!"** We were running towards our men when a horse arrived with Rupert Hentzau on it. It was so dark that he did not see us, so I took a large stick and ran forward towards the horse's head. Now, surely we had him! But he was too quick. He waved a sword at me and cut my stick in half. I stepped back, and before we knew it, he had disappeared into the night. I later found out that Lauengram and Krafstein were both killed by our men, although the fight had cost us three of our own men. We went home with heavy hearts for our friends, worried about the health of the King, and angry that Rupert had escaped.

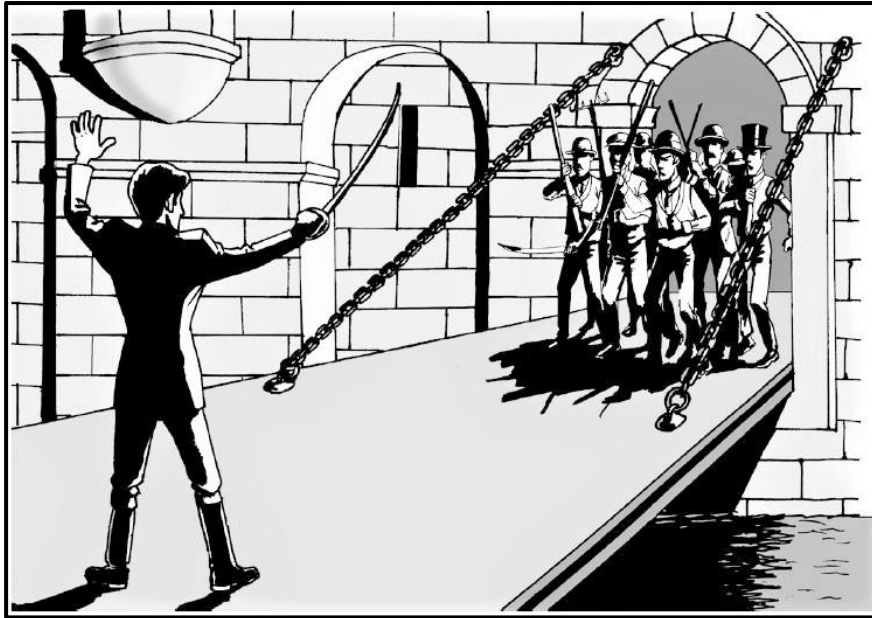


5. The next day, I received a visit from the Chief of Police in Strelsau. He told me that the British Ambassador had reported that an Englishman called Rassendyll had disappeared near the town of Zenda. They had found his bags at a nearby train station, and a man called Mr Featherly from Paris believed he was travelling with Madame de Mauban. He asked if I knew the lady. **"Yes, I do,"** I replied. **"I believe she and her servants were guests of Duke Michael."** **"I see,"** said the policeman. **"Go back to Strelsau and tell the Ambassador what you know. I'll look into this for you,"** I told him. **"Return in two weeks and I'll tell you what I've found."** I wanted to have at least two weeks without any more difficult questions. My game had almost been discovered. But with the policeman in town that day, there could be no more fighting around the castle, and Rupert clearly felt safe enough to ride out on his horse. When I saw him, I quickly caught up with him. He looked surprised to see me. **"How's my brother today?"** I asked him. **"He's well,"** he replied. **"He hopes he'll soon be in Strelsau."** **"Rupert, you're young. Why are you doing this? If you let your prisoner go free, I can help you,"** I said to him. **"You don't have to work for my brother."** Rupert looked ahead of him and said nothing for a minute, then he spoke quietly. **"You may be right. Attack the castle bravely. I'll tell you when. But Fritz and Sapt must die, and so must Michael and the King. That will leave two men alive: you and me. You'll stay as the King, and I'll have a reward."** **"Would you really work against Michael?"** I asked him. **"He's not a good man,"** he replied. **"He makes me angry. I nearly killed him myself last night. Think carefully about my plan."** With that, he rode off down the road.

6. Later that day, Sapt could see that I was deep in thought, but I did not tell him what I was thinking. There was a knock at the door and a boy brought me a message. It read: Johann will take this letter for me. I warned you before. The Duke discovered that I helped you that night in the summer house. He is now keeping me a prisoner in his mansion because he cannot trust me. Please, if you can, rescue me from this house of murderers. Antoinette de Mauban What could I do? Time went on and I knew that, for now, I could do nothing to help either Madame de Mauban or the King. I soon heard that the people in Strelsau did not like the fact that I had been away from them for so long. To keep them happy, my messengers told them that Flavia and I had arranged a date for our wedding, news which was greeted with great joy. Not everyone wanted to know this news, however. Johann told me that the Duke was furious to hear about the wedding. At the same time, the King had become so ill that the Duke had asked for a doctor to examine him. The doctor advised him to set the King free at once, but the Duke refused, adding that the doctor would have to stay with him until he was better or died, whichever came first. Johann also told us that Antoinette de Mauban was helping to look after the King, who was guarded by two of the remaining Six Men at all times. Although Johann did not want to return to the castle, we paid him well to go back and act as our spy. I found out from Johann where all the people stayed at night in the castle and the mansion, and who had the keys to the doors. **"I'll give you fifty thousand pieces of gold if you do what I ask you tomorrow night,"** I told Johann. **"I hear there are new servants at the castle. Do these servants know the King's a prisoner there?"** **"No, they don't know who the prisoner is,"** he answered. **"So if they saw me, they'd think that I was the King?"** I asked. **"Yes, they would, sir."** **"Good. Tomorrow night, give this letter to Antoinette de Mauban. Then, at two o'clock in the morning, open the front door to the mansion. Ask no more questions. Now go."**
7. When he was gone, I told Sapt and Fritz about my plan. It was our only chance to save the King. Sapt would take some men to the front door of the mansion. When Johann opened the door, they would quickly enter and tie up the servants if they did not want to help the King. At the same time Madame de Mauban would cry out for help from her room. The Duke would surely come to see what was happening, and we could take him. Then there would only be two men left guarding the King, so we would need to move quickly before they hurt him. Meanwhile, the house at Tarlenheim was to be filled with lights and music so that people believed we were having a ball. Marshal Strakencz would guard the house and the Princess and if, the next day, we had not returned, he would then march to the castle and ask to see the King at once. If the King was not there, he would quickly take Princess Flavia back to the capital where she would become Queen. So that night, at midnight, Sapt took his men to the mansion. I rode alone a different way to the castle, with clothes to keep me warm, weapons and a rope. Half an hour later, I was back by the moat. I left my horse and gun in some trees, tied some rope to another tree and climbed down into the water once more. I swam back to the pipe below the window, but now the pipe was fastened to the wall and no light showed. I looked up at the mansion and saw that the lights were on in the windows to the Duke's and Madame de Mauban's rooms. Then I heard voices and I saw Rupert walk towards the castle onto the drawbridge with De Gautet. "Let's go across before they lift the drawbridge for the night," Rupert said. They walked across and shortly after, the bridge went up. A few minutes later, Rupert returned alone. He looked around him and then quietly climbed down some hidden steps to the moat and swam across. Then he climbed some steps opposite and disappeared back into the mansion. What was he doing? It seemed that I was not the only one who had a plan for that dark, warm night.

Chapter 8

1. It was cold waiting in the water of the moat, so when Rupert disappeared into the mansion, I slowly climbed out and waited by the drawbridge gate next to the castle. Now only Detchard, Bersonin and De Gautet were left to protect the King in his prison. If only I had the keys to the King's room, but I knew I had to be patient. It was a quiet night and it was about one o'clock in the morning when there was a loud noise from the mansion. I looked up at one of the windows and saw a shadow walk across the light. A woman's voice cried, "**Help! Michael, help me!**" It was Antoinette de Mauban. This was exactly what I had asked her to say in my message to her, but it was around an hour too early, before my friends had reached the front door to the mansion, and before Johann had time to open it. I pulled out my sword and stood ready for what might happen. Then I heard her calling again. "**Help, Michael! It's Rupert Hentzau!**" called Antoinette. Michael must have heard Antoinette de Mauban call out, because I then heard him running to help her with his servants. There was now a loud argument. "**This woman's been writing secret letters to Rassendyll!**" I heard Rupert call out. "**She needs to be punished!**" "**She's my guest,**" I heard Michael say. "**It's you who needs to be punished!**" There was a shout and a noisy sword fight began in the room. It was hard to see what was happening, but briefly I saw Rupert and Johann through the window. "**That's for you, Johann!**" Rupert called, striking his sword at him. "**I know you're Rassendyll's spy!**" What had happened to Johann? What if he had been hurt? How could he open the door for our men? From the noises in the room, it seemed that Rupert was now fighting many men. Surely he would be caught. However, at the next moment, there was a loud cry and Rupert jumped out of the window and down into the moat below, where he swam away. Somehow, he had escaped.
2. A minute later, De Gautet appeared in front of me, so I struck him with my sword and he fell to the ground. Quickly I looked through his clothes for the keys: there were three. At last I could enter the room where the King was being kept prisoner. Opening the first door, I found myself at the top of some steps which led into a cold, dark room. The only light came from a small candle in one corner. As I walked down the steps, I could just hear voices coming from the room where the King was kept, behind a second door. Carefully walking towards the door, I stepped back quickly when it was suddenly opened. Now I could hear Detchard speaking: "**We mustn't kill him yet or there'll be trouble.**" When a person appeared, I struck him with my sword. It was Bersonin, who fell heavily to the ground. Understanding there was danger, Detchard closed the door fast: now surely he was alone in the room with the King and, remembering their plan, I knew the King was in real danger. Taking one of the keys, I quickly unlocked the door to the second room and opened it nervously. I think I expected to see the King had already been killed, but once inside the room I was relieved to see that Detchard was being held by the King's doctor. The King, weak from illness and chained in one corner, looked on in fear. The doctor was too weak to hold Detchard for long, and before I could help him, Detchard broke free and killed the poor doctor with his sword. Detchard turned to me and said, "**At last!**" I held up my sword and it was lucky that Detchard did not have a gun. We began to fight. He was a much better swordsman than me and knew all the tricks: he smiled when he cut me on the arm, and I would soon have died if the King had not helped me. "**My cousin Rudolf!**" he cried, as if he only now realised who I was. He reached forward and pushed the legs of a chair into Detchard's body. "**Push hard!**" I called "**Push against his legs!**" With the legs of the chair against him, Detchard found it hard to stand up. This made him angry, and he struck the King hard with his sword, but as he did so, he fell over the doctor's body. It was easy for me to kill him as he lay on the floor. Was the King dead too? I ran to where he lay. How happy I was when the King moaned, so I knew he was alive. but before I could help him I heard Rupert somewhere outside the King's prison calling out, "**Come on, Michael! Let's fight!**"
3. I tore a piece from my shirt to make a bandage for the cut on my arm, and quietly opening the prison door, I looked out. The drawbridge was now down once more. Rupert stood in the middle of the bridge with his sword, while the door to the mansion at the other end of the drawbridge was guarded by some very frightened-looking servants, as well as Johann, who I was pleased to see was unhurt. Then Antoinette de Mauban angrily called out from behind the servants, "**The Duke's dead, you've already killed him!**" "**Dead!**" called Rupert. "**That's good. Then I'm your leader now. Put down your weapons and do as I say.**" Instead of putting down their weapons, however, the servants allowed Antoinette de Mauban to walk onto the bridge, and she was pointing a gun at Rupert. But before she had time to shoot, Rupert once again jumped quickly into the water below the bridge. More loud voices were heard and I realised that Sapt and his men must have finally arrived at the front door, on the other side of the mansion. Feeling confident that the King would be safe, I ran after Rupert and also jumped into the water. He swam faster than I could with my wounded arm, and he quickly swam to where the rope was tied to the tree above the moat. He looked surprised but pleased to see the rope and quickly climbed up. I was, perhaps, a minute behind him and once at the top of the rope, I could see him running off into the forest. At one stage I saw him look back at me. I thought I saw him waving, as if it were a game, as if he knew I would never catch him.



4. We both ran, further and further into the forest of Zenda, until I heard another cry. What had Rupert done now? Soon I discovered that he had found a boy riding to market, and had quickly pulled him from the horse and taken his place. Rupert was trying to get the boy to be quiet by giving him some money, and this gave me time to catch up with him. **"Stop!"** I shouted. He looked at me and smiled. **"What did you do at the castle?"** he asked. **"I made sure that you are the last of the Six Men,"** I told him. **"Do you mean that you got inside the King's prison?"** he asked with surprise. **"I did."** **"And what's happened to the King?"** **"He was hurt, but he's alive,"** I told him. **"Why didn't you follow my plan?"** he said. **"We could have worked well together."** **"Get off your horse and fight like a man,"** I said. I ran at Rupert with my sword, but still on his horse, he easily pushed me away with his own sword. I ran at him again and managed to cut his cheek, but now he rode at me with his sword held high. I would surely have been killed, but at that moment there was a shout as Fritz arrived on another horse carrying a gun. Rupert stopped and looked at us. He understood that he could not fight us both, so he turned the horse and rode away as fast as he could. **"Go after him!"** I said to Fritz. But Fritz was looking at me, not at Rupert. **"Sir, you don't look well,"** he said, and I suddenly felt very weak. Fritz got off his horse and ran up to me as I fell to the ground. **"Is the King safe?"** I asked him weakly. **"Thanks to you, he is,"** said Fritz. **"But you're injured. Here, let me help you."** Next to us, the young boy looked on with wide eyes. **"Isn't that the King?"** he said, pointing at me. Fritz ignored him.
5. After a long rest, I felt strong enough to walk back, leaning heavily on Fritz's arm. I later learnt from Fritz and Antoinette de Mauban what happened that night at the castle and the events leading up to it. A few months earlier, the Duke had met Antoinette de Mauban in Paris and had asked her to Ruritania to see the coronation. She respected the Duke and was pleased to be his guest. However, some of the Duke's servants told her servants about the Duke's ambitions to be King. She did not like his evil plans and decided to warn me of everything he wanted to do. When the Duke found out that she had warned me in Strelsau, he tricked Antoinette de Mauban by inviting her and her servants to his castle. Once she was there, he made sure they could not leave in order to stop her telling anyone about his plan. Luckily, with Johann as our spy, Antoinette was still able to send us letters and we could use her position in the castle to help us. Somehow, however, Rupert discovered that she was helping us, so he wanted to punish her; by chance he chose the very night that we were attacking the castle. When Michael came to see what was happening, Rupert killed him in the fight that followed. Rupert, it seemed, believed that without the Duke, I really would stay as the King and somehow reward him for his evil work. He did not understand that I was pretending to be the King for the good of Ruritania: he believed I wanted to be King forever. Because Johann was helping the Duke, he could not open the front door for Sapt and his men at two o'clock, and it took a long time before they could finally enter the mansion. This they did just as Rupert was escaping from Antoinette de Mauban. Soon Sapt found the King lying in his prison, hurt but still alive. He was carried with his face covered to the mansion, where Antoinette helped to look after the poor King until another doctor could arrive. Meanwhile, Fritz came to look for me, knowing that I must have run off into the forest after Rupert. Back at the castle, Colonel Sapt had to ask Johann and Antoinette de Mauban to guard the secret about the real King. His men and the servants thought that the King had been injured while rescuing the prisoner, who had gone after Rupert Hentzau. News was sent to Tarlenheim to tell the Princess that the King was hurt but alive, and that she should wait at Tarlenheim for him. The people of Strelsau also heard that the brave King had fought with his brother because he had kept a prisoner in Zenda who was a friend of the King. The Duke had tried to kill the King, who was injured, but the evil Duke had died.

6. However, Princess Flavia did not want to wait at Tarlenheim and asked Marshal Strakencz to take her to Zenda at once so she could see the King. Her coach was approaching the castle as Fritz led me back from the forest. When we saw the coach, I quickly hid behind a tree, but we did not realise that the boy whose horse Rupert had taken had followed us. He was very excited and called out, **"Princess! The King's here, behind this tree!"** We tried to keep the boy quiet, but it was too late. The Princess's coach had stopped and I could see the Marshal leaning out of the coach window to talk to the boy. **"What you say is nonsense,"** called Strakencz. **"The King's injured in the castle."** **"No, really, he's here. He fought a man who took my horse."** At this moment, Sapt rode out of the castle to meet the party. **"This boy says the King's over there behind that tree,"** said Strakencz to Sapt with a strange look. **"No, he's in the castle behind me,"** said Sapt with a smile. **"Please, come and see if you don't believe me,"** said the boy. The smile disappeared from Sapt's face and he looked worried, before quickly saying, **"I'll go."** **"Let me come, too,"** said the Princess. Sapt thought for a moment, then said quietly, **"Then come alone."** The Princess was helped down from the coach. She then walked with Sapt across the grass towards me. I sat down behind the tree, putting my hands over my face. Fritz put his hand on my shoulder. When Princess Flavia saw me, she ran up and cried, **"It is you! Are you hurt?"** I said nothing, so she looked at Sapt and said, **"What's this game you're playing?"** **"This is not the King,"** said Sapt quietly. **"What do you mean it's not the King?"** said the Princess. **"This is not the King,"** said Sapt again. **"He is the King!"** cried Flavia. **"It's his face! Rudolf, look at me! What's happening?"** Looking into her eyes, I said, **"Forgive me, Madame. I'm not the King."** The Princess looked surprised, then frightened, and I could see she did not know what to say. **"Come,"** Sapt said gently to the Princess. **"It's time you came into the castle. We have much to discuss."**
7. I watched as she walked away. Now my game was nearly at an end. All that day Fritz and I waited in the forest while the Princess stayed in the castle with the King. That night, when it was dark, Fritz led me to the castle where I stayed, unseen, in the rooms that had been the King's prison. Johann brought me food and told me what he knew. The King was getting better and had seen the Princess with Sapt, and Marshal Strakencz had returned to Strelsau. Johann also said that everyone was talking about the strange prisoner of Zenda and who he could be. Some said he was an English friend of the King's who had heard about the Duke's plans, so the Duke had locked him up to stop him from speaking to the King. Later that evening, Fritz came to me and said the King wanted to see me. So I went to his room, where he was lying in bed with a doctor next to him. He looked weak and tired, but smiled when he saw me. **"Cousin! My friend! You're injured, too. We're always the same, you and I!"** I smiled and bowed down before him. **"I want to thank you,"** he said. **"I hoped that tomorrow, you'd come with me to Strelsau and tell everyone about the brave things that you've done, but Sapt tells me that this isn't possible."** **"He's right, sir. My work in your country is complete."** **"Very well, I'll return to Strelsau alone. People know that the King was injured, so they won't be surprised to see me looking a little different. But you've taught me something, cousin Rudolf. You've shown me what a true King should be,"** he said. **"I'd happily help you again, sir,"** I said. And I meant it, thinking that perhaps I would need to. Nobody knew where Rupert had disappeared to, and the thought of the man who had almost beaten me still makes my heart beat louder in my chest.



8. "The Princess has asked to see you, too," said the King. "She can come in now." "Does she know everything?" I whispered, before she arrived. "She does," the King answered. The Princess came into the room and I bowed down to her. "It seems you've tricked me," she said, but not unkindly. "I would like to apologise to you for this," I said. "You don't need to apologise. I should thank you for all you've done for Ruritania," she said. "I've learned all about duties and responsibilities," I said to her. "It's a lesson I'll never forget." "And we'll never forget how you've helped the King," she replied. The King smiled, then closed his eyes and fell asleep, and the doctor said it was best if I left him. I bowed and left the people who would shape the future of Ruritania, not knowing that I would never see the King, the Princess – or Rupert – ever again. A few hours later, Sapt and Fritz bowed down to me as I got on a train at a small station near the border with Ruritania. The other passengers on the train must have thought an important person in a large coat and hat was about to leave their country, but it was only I, Rudolf Rassendyll, an English gentleman.

9. When I finally returned to England, I had some explaining to do. My brother Robert and his wife Rose told me that everyone had been looking for me. And Rose was very disappointed when I told her I had not written a book. "At least the ambassador has a job for you soon," she said. "He now knows which country he'll be sent to." "Where's that?" I asked. "Ruritania. Sir Jacob Borrodaile is to be the British Ambassador in Strelsau." "I don't think it'd be a good idea for me to work there," I said. "But you promised you'd take the job!" cried Rose. "You're right, but please look at this," I said, showing them a photograph in a newspaper which showed the King's coronation. There was I, with Sapt, Fritz, Michael and the Princess. Robert and Rose looked at it in amazement. "Yes, you look very like the King of Ruritania," said Rose. "But this is just an excuse. You could have become an ambassador yourself one day! If you don't go, you'll never be anyone important!" I knew, however, that I did not need to go. I had been something far more important than an ambassador: I had been a King. I remembered and understood those words Rose had said to me all those months ago: a person with a position in society has responsibilities. But even without a position in society, we all have a duty to help other people when we can, and we all become better people for doing so.

THE END

Explanation



Chapter 1

I) The setting of the novel:

1. Place of the novel: England and Ruritania
2. Time: Nineteenth century \ 1890s
3. The author: Anthony Hope
4. Genre: adventure story
5. Countries and towns: England (Burlesdon) \ France (Paris) \ Germany (Dresden) \ Ruritania (Zenda \ Strelsau: the capital)
6. Themes:

a. good versus evil	e. honesty
b. love and honour	f. responsibility
c. greed	g. loyalty
d. bravery	h. sacrifice
7. Places of the chapter: (Lord Burlesdon's house \ Paris \ a restaurant \ a railway station \ an inn \ the forest of Zenda)

II) The characters:

1. Rudolf Rassendyll: بطل القصة شخص مرفه لم يجد فرصة لأن يظهر كل قدراته
2. Robert Rassendyll (Lord Burlesdon): اخوه الاكبر وله وضع اجتماعي مميز كحاكم لأحد المقاطعات
3. Rose Rassendyll: زوجة روبرت ، انتقدت رودلف علي كسله وهي من اخبره عن الوظيفة في السفارة
4. Amelia Rassendyll: قديما تزوجت احد ملوك عائلة ايلفبرج ومعظم نسلها له نفس الشكل المميز ذو الشعر الأحمر
5. Sir Jacob Borrodaile: احد السياسيين الانجليز ، عرض علي رودلف وظيفة في سفارة
6. Uncle William: احد اقارب رودلف ، نصحه بأن يزور باريس
7. George Featherly: احد اصدقاء رودلف في باريس ، يعمل في سفارة انجلترا واخبر رودلف عن دوق مايكل
8. Bertram Bertrand: احد اصدقاء رودلف في باريس ، يعمل كصحفي واخبر رودلف عن انطوانيت
9. Antoinette de Mauban: سيدة فرنسية ، صديقة لمايكل وانت لحضور التتويج
10. Rudolf Elphberg (Rudolf the Fifth): ملك روريتانيا المنتظر
11. Michael Elphberg (Duke of Strelsau): اخو الملك المتطلع للعرش
12. An old woman (the hotel owner): قارنت بين الملك واخية ، اوضحت لم شعبية مايكل اوسع جدا من الملك بين العامة
13. Two daughters: ابنتا صاحبة الفندق واخبرا رودلف عن صفات الملك
14. Johann: احد خدم دوق مايكل ، اندهش من شبه رودلف الشديد مع الملك
15. Colonel Sapt: احد اهم مساعدي الملك
16. Fritz von Tarlenheim: احد اهم مساعدي الملك

Chapter in points

A) England in 1890s:

1. The British Empire swept all the world.
2. People used horses, coaches and trains for transport and they communicated by sending letters by post or telegrams.
3. The upper class had a life of leisure. They had social ceremonies like balls, hunting and horse races.
4. Royal and wealthy people owned vast areas of farm land besides stocks in banks and factories.

B) Introduction:

1. Rudolf Rassendyll was 29 years old. He was a member of the Rassendyll family.
2. His brother Robert Rassendyll was Lord Burlesdon in England.
3. Robert's wife was Rose or Countess Burlesdon.
4. In 1733, Countess Amelia Rassendyll married a member of the Ruritanian royal family, the Elphbergs.
5. She had red hair and straight nose so most of her descendants of the Elphbergs were like her.
6. Rudolf Rassendyll was the last one to have the appearance of the Ruritanian royal family with his red hair and straight nose.
7. Robert Rassendyll had many pictures of Amelia and her descendants on his walls.

C) The rich lazy man:

1. Rose accused Rudolf that he was lazy and never did anything useful.
2. Rudolf told her that he didn't need responsibilities but opportunities as:
 - He had enough money to do anything and didn't have to work.
 - He enjoyed his position in society because his brother was Lord Burlesdon.
 - His family were well-known and rich.
3. Rose was annoyed as her family was rich but less important than the Rassendylls.
4. Rudolf thought that he was not lazy at all:
 - He learned a lot when he was at a German school and German university.
 - He spoke English, German, French, Italian and Spanish.
 - He was good with a gun and a strong swordsman. He was very good at riding a horse.
 - He was an officer in the Queen's army.

5. Rose told Rudolf that he was different from his brother:
 - Rudolf had red hair.
 - Robert realised that his position had responsibilities.
 - Rudolf saw that his position had only opportunities.
 - Rudolf said that his responsibilities were his opportunities.

D) An opportunity:

1. Rose told Rudolf that Sir Jacob Borrodaile offered him a real opportunity.
2. He's going to be an ambassador in six months' time and wanted Rudolf to work for him.
3. Rudolf told Rose that he would accept the job and promised her to work in any embassy as:
 - His sister-in-law asked him in a way which was impossible to refuse.
 - He thought the job sounded interesting.
 - The job was after six months.
4. Because there were still six months before the job, Rassendyll decided to visit Ruritania.
5. His decision was helped as:
 - He had an interest in Ruritania because of his family's relation with the royal family there.
 - He read in The Times newspaper that Rudolf the Fifth would become King of Ruritania in the next three weeks.
 - He thought it would be fantastic to see this joyous occasion with amazing celebrations.
6. Because Rudolf didn't want Rose to think he was lazy:
 - He told her he was going walking in the Alps as he didn't like to tell people where he went.
 - He told her he would write a book about social problems in the country.
7. Robert told Rudolf writing a book was the best way to get into politics as he wrote many books.

E) The journey to Ruritania:

1. He was going from England to Ruritania in the middle of Europe through Paris and Dresden.
2. Uncle William told him no man should ever pass Paris without spending twenty four hours in the city.
3. Rassendyll booked a night at The Continental Hotel then called on some old friends:
 - George Featherly, who worked at the embassy.
 - Bertram Bertrand, who was a famous journalist in Paris.

4. They met Rassendyll in a restaurant and they told him about the latest events in Paris:
- Bertram told him that a few important people were visiting the city.
 - Lady Antoinette de Mauban who was well known for her wealth and ambition was leaving Paris today to Ruritania.
 - George told him that Antoinette was a guest of the Duke of Strelsau, Michael Elphberg:
 - He was the half-brother to the King of Ruritania, Rudolf Elphberg.
 - People said Michael was his father's favourite son and Michael wished he were the King.
 - He had gone back from Paris to Ruritania for the coronation.
 - They said he was a very clever man.

F) The station:

1. George went with Rassendyll to the station where he bought a ticket to Dresden.
2. Rassendyll did not tell George that he was going to Ruritania because the news would have gone to Bertram and then the newspapers.
3. At the station, they saw Antoinette de Mauban, a beautiful, tall and fashionably dressed woman of about thirty who was standing with two servants.
4. The journey from Paris to Dresden was long and boring.
5. When the train arrived at the Ruritanian border, Rassendyll was surprised when the guards stared at him and his passport before letting him into the country because he looked exactly like the King.

G) On the train:

1. Rassendyll decided to stop at Zenda because:
 - He read in a Ruritanian newspaper that the King's coronation was in two days.
 - All the hotels were full of people who wanted to see the event.
 - The newspaper described the excitement in the country and its capital city, Strelsau.
2. Zenda was a small town eighty kms from the capital, and about ten kms from the border.
3. He thought that he could walk in the hills and see the town's famous castle, then take the train the same day to Strelsau to see the coronation.
4. Antoinette remained on the train for its journey to the capital.

H) A small inn:

1. The innkeeper told Rassendyll that she was not very interested in what happened in the capital:
 - The hotel owner said she wished the Duke was the new King not his brother.
 - She loved Duke Michael, Duke of Strelsau.
 - He was the man who was responsible for the land around Zenda and its castle.
 - She said all people knew Michael as he always lived in Ruritania and cared about them.
 - The King was a stranger. He'd been abroad for most of his life and not many people knew what he looked like.
 - People said he only liked hunting and good food. He should let the Duke become the King.
2. Rassendyll told the innkeeper that he felt sorry for the Duke as he couldn't be a king although he is a better man than the King but it is the right of the older brother to be the king.
3. The King was staying in a hunting lodge and would travel to the capital for his coronation.
4. Rassendyll decided he would walk in the forest the next day so that he might see the King.
5. The older daughter said that Johann, the Duke's servant told her that the King had red hair.
6. The old woman told Rassendyll that the Duke invited the King to his land till the coronation.
7. The woman said that it was hard for the King and the Duke to be friends as they both wanted the same thing, to be the King.
8. When Johann saw Rassendyll, he took off his hat and stepped back in surprise.
9. One daughter said they didn't see red hair except for the King's family, the Elphbergs.
10. Johann said he didn't expect to see any new guests in the inn.

I) The castle of Zenda:

1. Johann told Rassendyll that he could stay at his sister's house in Strelsau.
2. She was married to a wealthy trader and she had invited Johann to stay with them for the coronation, but he was unable to go.
3. Rassendyll wanted to see the forest where the King was staying, so he planned to walk through the forest to the next station where he could catch a train to the capital.

4. He sent his luggage to the station and set off up the hill towards the well-defended castle:
 - It was very old but well built, with a moat around it.
 - Behind it was a large modern mansion, used by the Duke of Strelsau as his country home.
 - The mansion was reached by a wide road.
 - The castle could only be reached by a drawbridge between it and the mansion.
5. He walked in the dark forest and the tall trees with many leaves gave him cool shade.
6. It was a beautiful place so he decided to rest by lying against an enormous tree.
7. It was so quiet and peaceful in the forest that he fell into a deep sleep.
8. While Rassendyll was sleeping and dreaming of living in the castle he heard two men talking:
 - Colonel Sapt: an old man, short but tough with light blue eyes, and looked like a soldier.
 - Fritz von Tarlenheim: a young man, thin, of medium height, and looked like a gentleman.
 - Both carried guns and were dressed for hunting.
9. Sapt knew that Rudolf was a relative to the Burlesdons from his name, Rassendyll.
10. Sapt said that although Rassendyll and the King looked like identical twins, they do not have identical personalities:
 - Rassendyll was an officer for the Queen's army so he must be good with a sword.
 - The King was not a fighting man. He liked to live well, preferred eating to action.
11. Rassendyll told them he and the King were alike because he liked to have an easy life, too.
12. When Rassendyll saw the King, he gave out a loud cry while the King stood back in amazement because they looked so alike.

Critical thinking questions:

1. Do you agree that people who have a lot of money should do nothing? Explain your point of view.
 - No. Everyone in society should have a duty to help other people.
2. Do you think a person like Rassendyll is very serious about work or life? Why/Why not?
 - No. He is very rich and doesn't want to have any responsibilities.
3. Do you think that Rose was right to be angry with Rudolf Rassendyll? Why?
 - Yes. She is his sister-in-law and she wants him to be a good person.
4. How do you think Rudolf Rassendyll's good education should affect his position and career?
 - He could find a good job easily. The good job would give him a higher position in society.
5. Do you think a person who had a good education like Rassendyll was really lazy?
 - No. He was not lazy. He just needed the chance in which he could make full use of his skills.

6. How do you think Rudolf Rassendyll's fighting skills could be useful for him?
 - He would be a good swordsman so he could find a job in the army.
7. "To a man like me, opportunities are responsibilities." What did Rassendyll mean by this sentence?
 - He doesn't need to work as he has enough money to do anything; his brother is Lord Burlesdon and his family is well-known and rich.
8. Rassendyll's position in society gave him opportunities. Do you agree? Why?
 - Yes. Sir Jacob Borrodaile offered him a good job.
9. If you were Rassendyll, would you have a life of leisure or try to do something useful? Why?
 - I would try to do something useful. Life must have a goal to have a meaning.
10. Do you think Rassendyll was right to boast about his brother's high position (being Lord Burlesdon)?
 - No. He must work to be prove that he is as good as his brother.
11. Rassendyll was good with guns and a strong swordsman. When do you think he learnt these skills?
 - When he was at the Queen's army.
12. Who do you think exceled the other Rudolf Rassendyll or Robert Rassendyll?
 - Robert. He is well-known and wealthy but he serves the people and cares for them.
13. Why do you think Rose compared Rudolf Rassendyll to his elder brother Robert Rassendyll?
 - To make Rassendyll think that his way of life is wrong and meaningless.
14. Which opportunities do you think Rudolf Rassendyll enjoyed?
 - Going on journeys. Spending good time with friends. Using his family name to get people do things for him.
15. Do you think the job which Rose offered to Rudolf was suitable for him? Why?
 - Yes. He will work as an assistant to an ambassador and he has the skills and languages needed.
16. Do you think Rudolf Rassendyll was happy with Rose's offer?
 - No. He just tried to find a way out of their conversation.
17. Rose was a very persuasive person. Do you agree? Why?
 - Yes. She had a way which Rassendyll couldn't refuse to take the job.
18. How do you think Rudolf Rassendyll could use his time during the six months perfectly?
 - He could travel to a new place.
19. Do you think Rudolf Rassendyll's decision to visit Ruritania was good one? Why?
 - Yes. There would be a coronation and there is a relation between the Rassendylls and the Elphbergs.
20. Do you think that Rudolf Rassendyll was right when he lied to his family? Why?
 - No. The truth is always better so if something goes wrong he could ask for their help.
21. Why do you think Rudolf Rassendyll told Rose that he was going to write a book?
 - Not to think that he was lazy.
22. Robert says that 'writing a book is the best way to get into politics.' What do you think?
 - I agree. As he could write his political views before applying them.
23. Which was more important for Rudolf to write about political problems or his adventure?
 - His adventure. He knows nothing about politics.
24. Why do you think Rose not Robert was the one who advised Rassendyll?
 - Maybe Robert was embarrassed to accuse him of being lazy.

25. "How little we know about the future." Apply that to Rassendyll.
 - He intended not to write a book as he promised Rose, but after his adventure he found it worth writing in a book.
26. Why do you think Rudolf visited Paris while passing through the city?
 - To spend good time as his uncle William advised him.
27. Why do you think Rassendyll took his Uncle Williams's advice about spending 24 hours in Paris?
 - Paris was a very beautiful city.
28. Why do you think George Featherly thought that Duke Michael was his father's favourite son?
 - He was cleverer than his elder brother Rudolf Elphberg.
29. Do you think that Antoinette de Mauban was a famous lady? Why?
 - Yes. Bertram considered her arrival to Paris is an important event.
30. Why do you think that Rassendyll did not tell his friend George about his real destination?
 - He was afraid that Bertram knew and published that in the papers so his family would know that he lied to them.
31. Why do you think that Rudolf Rassendyll wanted to meet Antoinette de Mauban on the train?
 - She was a famous beautiful woman and the journey was boring.
32. Why do you think the guards at the border stared at Rassendyll before letting him into Ruritania?
 - He looked like the King.
33. Why do you think Antoinette de Mauban remained on the train for its journey to the capital?
 - To attend the coronation as she was Michael's guest.
34. The innkeeper was not very interested in what happened in the capital. Why do you think so?
 - She hated the new King and wanted Michael to be the king.
35. Do you think Rudolf Elphberg (the King) and his brother Michael (the Duke) are good friends?
 - No. They both wanted to be the king.
36. Rassendyll thought that it was right that the older brother became the King. Do you agree? Why?
 - Yes. There must be rules for whom to be a king and that rules must not be violated.
37. Was it right if Michael wanted to be the king? Explain your answer.
 - No. Even if he was better than his brother, it was not his right.
38. Why do you think Johann stepped back in surprise when he saw Rassendyll in the inn?
 - As Rassendyll looked exactly like the King.
39. Why do you think Johann asked Rassendyll if he had ever seen the King?
 - To know if Rassendyll knew that he looked like the King.
40. Johann offered Rassendyll to stay in his sister's house. Do you think Rassendyll was in need of that offer?
 - Yes. It would be easier for him to stay in Strelsau not Zenda for the coronation.
41. Do you think that the castle appealed to Rassendyll? Why?
 - Yes. He thought that it was well-defended. He dreamt that he was living in the castle.
42. Why do you think the castle was well-defended and had a moat around it?
 - To stop anyone from attacking it.
43. Why do you think that Rassendyll and the King's guards would understand each other well?
 - They were both soldiers.

44. Why did Sapt guess that Rassendyll and the King were not identical in personalities?
- Rassendyll must be good with the gun as he was a soldier in the Queen's army but the King wasn't a fighting man.
45. The King was not a fighting man. Do you think it was important for the King to have fighting skills?
- Yes. As at this time, fighting skills were main skills for every young man.
46. Fritz thought the King was a kind man. Do you think so? How do you know?
- Yes. He is staying at his brother's hunting lodge although all people know that Michael wanted to be a king.
47. How do you think Rassendyll and the King were similar in personalities?
- They both like the easy life.
48. Do you think there might be a problem with the fact that Rudolf looks very much like the King?
- Yes. People may not know who the real king is.
49. Do you think Rassendyll was lucky to look exactly like the King of Ruritania? Why?
- No. He may face problems because of this similarity.
50. What do you think would have happened if Rassendyll had met Duke Michael instead of the King?
- Michael may use Rassendyll to achieve his plan to be a king.



Chapter 2

I) The setting of the chapter:

1. Place: Ruritania (the forest \ hunting lodge \ the station \ the streets of Strelsau)
2. Time: Nineteenth century \ 1890s

II) The characters:

1. Rudolf Rassendyll: بطل القصة ، وافق علي ان يحل محل الملك لإنقاذ عملية التتويج
2. Rudolf Elphberg: الملك ، شخص غير حريص ، شره ، تم تخديره من قبل اخوة لمنع التتويج
3. Fritz von Tarlenheim: هو من قال ان مايكل قد خدر اخية
4. Sapt: شرح نية مايكل الانقلاب علي الملك الشرعي ، وهو من اقترح ان يستبدل رودلف الملك لإنقاذ التتويج
5. Josef: الخادم الشخصي للملك
6. Johann's mother: احد خدم مايكل ، وعلمت بخطة استبدال الملك فتم حبسها
7. Marshal Strakencz: احد قادة الجيش ، كان في استقبال رودلف في العاصمة
8. Antoinette de Mauban: رآها رودلف تنظر اليه في موكبه ولكنها لم تعلق بشيء

Chapter in points:

A) The two cousins:

1. Rassendyll felt strange to see the King looking like him and looked at each other in silence.
2. Rassendyll examined the King carefully and saw some differences:
 - The King's mouth was less wide.
 - Rassendyll's face was a little thinner.
3. The first names of both the King and Rassendyll were Rudolf.
4. The King apologised to Rassendyll that he was surprised to see his double.
5. The King said he was not angry that Rassendyll looked like him as Rassendyll couldn't help that.
6. When Rassendyll told the King that he was going to Strelsau, the King smiled as he thought that his brother would be angry if he saw them together.
7. Fritz said that it wouldn't be a good idea for Rassendyll to visit Strelsau because it was the day of the King's coronation. If Rassendyll went, he might take some of the attention.
8. The King asked Rassendyll to eat with him as he didn't meet a new cousin every day.
9. Although he had an early start tomorrow, the King said that good food was more important than sleep.

B) The hunting lodge:

1. The King asked his personal servant, Josef if the dinner was ready.
2. Rassendyll ate a lot because he was hungry after his walk and the food was delicious.
3. Colonel Sapt and Fritz did not want to eat too much because of the events the next day.
4. Fritz said that he and Sapt would ride at six tomorrow morning to Zenda and return with soldiers to take the King to the station.
5. The King was very naive, careless and unwise:
 - He was happy his brother let him use his guards although he knew his brother wanted his crown.
 - He stayed at Michael's hunting lodge and let him prepare the coronation.
 - He didn't care about Fritz's and Sapt's warning.
 - He wanted Rassendyll to eat much with him as they wouldn't get up so early.
 - He said that his brother knew him well thinking that his brother knew that he loved food so he presented him the cakes as a special dish but in fact his brother knew well that he was a glutton and he would eat all the food even the poisoned cakes.
6. Josef told the King that the Duke asked him to give the King some cakes at the end of the meal.

C) The start of the adventure:

1. Rassendyll woke up very angry because:
 - It was very early in the morning.
 - Sapt had thrown water over him to wake him up.
 - He was poisoned as he ate one of the poisoned cakes.
2. The cakes had a very bad effect on the King:
 - The King was lying on the floor.
 - His face was red and he was breathing heavily.
 - The King's pulse was very weak and slow.
 - He couldn't attend the coronation.
3. Fritz said it was not a good idea to get a doctor as:
 - There was no doctor for fifteen kilometres.
 - Even a thousand doctors wouldn't make the King better today.

4. Fritz said they must tell the people that the King was ill so he couldn't attend the coronation.
5. Sapt said that if the King was not crowned today, he'd never be King:
 - The whole country was waiting for the King today.
 - Most of the army was waiting too and Duke Michael leading it.
6. Fritz said that Duke Michael had poisoned the King.
7. Sapt said that the Duke poisoned his brother:
 - So that his brother couldn't be crowned.
 - If Rudolf Elphberg didn't become King, Duke Michael would take the crown.

D) The replacement plan:

1. Sapt said that it was lucky that they met Rudolf Rassendyll because he could go to Strelsau to be crowned instead of Rudolf Elphberg.
2. Rassendyll laughed and said it was impossible to be the King as:
 - People would realise that he was not the King.
 - He was English.
 - The King won't forgive him.
3. Fritz said it would be easy to forget that Rassendyll was English as:
 - His German was perfect.
 - If he dressed in different clothes, no one would recognise him.
4. Sapt tried to persuade Rassendyll to replace the King:
 - If he didn't go to Strelsau, Duke Michael would be King.
 - The King would either be dead or in prison.
 - The country needed this even if the King didn't want this.
5. Sapt said they had only a chance:
 - They wouldn't wait for Michael's guards but leave for Strelsau at once because the guards would either kill or arrest them.
 - They could hide the King in the cellar.
 - When the guards arrived they would think no one was here.
 - If they searched the building, Josef would say the hunting lodge is empty.

6. Sapt put a plan to get the King to Strelsau after the coronation:
 - As soon as they were in the King's bedroom, Sapt and Rassendyll would leave and return to the hunting lodge by horses.
 - Fritz could stay and guard the King's bedroom in the palace.
 - Josef would get the King ready for the journey back.
 - The King would then return to the palace with Sapt in the dark.
 - Rassendyll would ride fast to the border and try to leave the country before it was light.
7. While carrying the King out of the room, they realised that Johann's mother was watching them.
8. They locked Johann's mother in the cellar with the King as:
 - She overheard the replacement plan.
 - She might tell Michael's men about their plan.
9. Josef dressed Rassendyll in the King's clothes.

E) To the capital:

1. On their way to Zenda, Sapt told Rassendyll the history of the King's life:
 - His family, likes, interests, weaknesses, friends and servants.
 - He told him how he should behave in the palace.
 - He said he would always be at his side to tell him who the people that he met were.
2. The station guard was surprised to see the King at that time with no guards but Fritz told him that the King changed his plans, and they got on the train to the capital.
3. Rassendyll was nervous and said he was not made of stone because he was afraid that anyone could realise that he was not the King.
4. When the train reached the station at Strelsau, everything was busy:
 - Men ran up to them, then ran away again.
 - Soldiers rode off on horses, other men showed the King to the station restaurant.
 - During breakfast, Rassendyll could hear music and people cheering "God save the King".
5. A group of soldiers arrived to welcome them:
 - It was led by Marshal Strakencz, a very important person in the army.
 - He was a tall old man whose jacket was covered in medals.
6. The Marshal greeted Rassendyll and said he was sorry that the Duke could not meet him.

F) Two different parts in Strelsau:

1. They got onto horses and Rassendyll rode through the capital:

- The Marshal was on his right and Sapt on his left.
- The city was partly old and partly new.
- There were wide, modern streets where the rich people lived in big houses.
- These were the people who had always lived well under the King's father, and who would support the new King because they knew that nothing would change.
- Behind the modern streets, there was a very different area that made up the old town.
- Thousands of poor people were crowded into tiny houses which were old and hot in the summer, freezing cold in the winter.
- These people did not want things to stay the same. They did not like the King and supported Michael, who said he wanted things to be different and gave them hope for a better future.
- Rassendyll knew that this area would not be safe for him as the King.

2. They continued towards a great square where the palace stood:

- There were coloured flags and colourful ribbons.
- People lined the streets, clapping and cheering.
- People threw flowers above him from the balconies and he waved to them.

3. Rassendyll was very happy as he felt the truth:

- At that moment, he believed that he was actually the King.
- He looked up and laughed, delighted to see so much colour and so many happy faces.
- He saw Antoinette de Mauban who stared at him and her expression changed.
- Rassendyll was worried that Antoinette would cry out that he wasn't the King.
- When Antoinette didn't call out, Rassendyll thought that she had not recognised him.

Critical thinking questions:

1. Do you think the King might be angry because Rassendyll looked exactly like him? Why?

- Yes. He might think that there is an ordinary person looking like him.

2. What do you think the King means when he says to Rassendyll, 'You can't help looking like me.'?

- Rassendyll can't control what he looked like.

3. What do you think Michael would feel if he saw the King and Rassendyll together? Why?

- He might be angry. As he wanted to get rid of one king and there would be two in front of him.

4. Why do you think both Sapt and Fritz objected to Rassendyll's going to Strelsau?
 - He may take some of the attention from the King.
5. When Fritz suggests that Rassendyll should not attend the coronation, the King seems surprised and asks Sapt for advice. What does that tell you about the King?
 - He trusted Sapt.
6. The King used the word 'cousin' when he first met Rassendyll in the forest of Zenda. How do you think that he knew that Rassendyll was a distant cousin?
 - From his surname. And Sapt told him about his family's relation with Amalia Rassendyll.
7. Why do you think the King had to go to bed early?
 - He had to go to Zenda early to take the train to attend the coronation.
8. Why do you think the King insisted to eat well despite Sapt's warning?
 - He is unwise and careless. He preferred food to sleep.
9. Fritz and Sapt felt worried when the King started to eat. Illustrate.
 - They knew that he would eat much and stay up late so they wouldn't get up early.
10. Why do you think the Duke invited the King to stay in his hunting lodge in Zenda before the coronation while he was in Strelsau preparing for the coronation?
 - To be under his eyes and to be away from the guards to commit his plot.
11. How do you think Michael prepared a clever plan to dominate the King before the coronation?
 - He invited him to his hunting lodge without guards away from people to kidnap the King easily without anyone suspecting him.
12. Why do you think Sapt had to throw water over Rassendyll to wake him up?
 - Rassendyll was poisoned as he ate one of the poisoned cakes.
13. Rassendyll thought the King was poisoned. Do you agree? Why?
 - Yes. As those cakes were the last thing that he had before being fainted.
14. Duke Michael made use of his brother's weakness point to commit his evil act. Explain.
 - He knew that his brother was naïve and wouldn't realise his plot. He knew that his brother was a glutton and would eat all the cakes. So he poisoned the cakes so that the King wouldn't attend the coronation.
15. The Duke's illegal ambitions made him a criminal. Do you agree? Why?
 - Yes. Michael had no legal right to claim the throne so he poisoned, kidnapped and tried to kill his brother to achieve his ambition.
16. Do you think loving food and seeking an easy life are good qualities for a king?
 - No. The king had to think of his people not his lusts.
17. Josef, the servant, gives the cakes to the King at the end of his meal; the King praises his brother Michael, saying, 'Well done, Michael! He knows me well!' What does this tell us about the King?
 - He was naïve. He thought that his brother knew that he loved food so he presented him the cakes as a special dish but in fact his brother knew well that he was a glutton and he would eat all the food even the poisoned cakes.
18. Why do you think Duke Michael tried to get rid of his brother by poisoning him instead of any other way?
 - If he killed the King, all people would suspect him as they knew about his ambition to be a king.
19. Michael ordered Josef to give the poisoned cakes to the King. Do you think Josef was involved in this crime? Why? /Why not?
 - No. Josef was the personal servant of the King so he was a trusted person. And he himself could be poisoned if he ate from the cakes.

20. What do you think might have happened if Sapt and Fritz had eaten any cakes at the hunting lodge?
 - They would be poisoned and Michael's men would come to kill all of them.
21. Rassendyll tells himself that he has no choice but to pretend to be the King. Do you think he has a choice? Is there something else they can do?
 - Yes. They could tell the people that Michael poisoned the King and wait till the King recovered.
22. Do you think it was safe to leave the unconscious King in the cellar of the hunting lodge? Why? /Why not? What else could they have done?
 - No. Michael's men might find him and kill him. They could hide the King in any place loyal to the King in Zenda.
23. Why do you think it was important for the group to leave the hunting lodge before Michael's men arrived?
 - Michael's men might kidnap or kill them.
24. How do you think Michael would benefit from the King's absence during the coronation?
 - He would show people that the King was irresponsible and he should be the King instead of him.
25. Why do you think it was important to hide the King in the hunting lodge?
 - So when Michael's men arrived, they wouldn't find him.
26. Why do you think Johann's mother was locked in the cellar with the King?
 - She overheard the replacement plan and she might tell Michael's men.
27. At what time do you think it would be possible to fetch the King from Zenda? Why?
 - At night after the coronation when most people were asleep.
28. Why do you think it would be important for Rassendyll to leave the country immediately after the coronation?
 - So no one knew that he wasn't the real King and before Michael did anything to him.
29. When do you think Michael would realize that they knew his plan?
 - At the coronation. When he saw Rassendyll.
30. How do you think the information Sapt told Rassendyll about the King was helpful?
 - He would know how to behave during the coronation. He would recognize the people he would meet in the palace.
31. Why do you think Rassendyll felt nervous before reaching Strelsau train station?
 - He was worried that people may recognize that he wasn't the King.
32. "God save both Kings" said Sapt. What do you think he meant by both Kings?
 - That both the real King and the pretend king are in danger.
33. When the pretend King (Rassendyll) arrived at the train station he asked to have his breakfast. Do you think he was really hungry? Why do you think he asked so?
 - No. He just wanted to give himself time to feel relieved.
34. Why do you think Rassendyll became less nervous after meeting the Marshal?
 - No one recognized that he wasn't the real king even the Marshal.
35. There were social and local divisions in Strelsau. Explain.
 - There were wide, modern streets where the rich people lived in big houses. Those people lived well under the King's father so they would support the new King because they knew that nothing would change.
 - Behind the modern streets, thousands of poor people were crowded into tiny houses which were old and hot in the summer, freezing cold in the winter. These people did not want things to stay the same so they supported Michael, who gave them hope for a better future.

36. If you were Rassendyll, would you agree to risk your life and replace the King? Why?

- Yes. We must help other people whenever we can.

37. Did Colonel Sapt do the right thing when he locked Johann's mother with the King in the cellar? Why? Why not?

- No. They should have killed her as Michael's men might find her and she would tell them about Rassendyll and the place of the King.

38. Why do you think that Rudolf really believed that he was the King in the capital city?

- All people were cheering and clapping. They were all happy and colours were everywhere.

39. Do you think a man like Rudolf Elphberg can run his country well? Say why.

- No. He lacks all skills that made him a good King. He wasn't popular, very naïve, doesn't listen to his advisers and doesn't know anything about his country.

40. What do you think would have happened if the King had been good to the poor people of Strelsau?

- Michael wouldn't dare to poison him as people would definitely stand against Michael if he wanted to be the King.

41. Do you think Michael was deceiving the poor people by giving them hope for a better future? Why?

- Yes. He was an evil man. He just wanted their support to be the king instead of the legal King.



Chapter 3

I) The setting of the chapter:

1. Place: Ruritania (the streets of Strelsau \ a beautiful building \ a coach \ the palace \ the fork \ the hunting lodge)
2. Time: Nineteenth century \ 1890s

II) The characters:

1. Rudolf Rassendyll: بطل القصة ، اجبر علي اكمال دوره كبديل للملك
2. Sapt: اقترح علي رودلف الاستمرار كملك
3. Fritz: ظل في العاصمة للتمويه ان الملك موجود بها
4. Marshal Strakencz: صاحب رودلف في جولته بالعاصمة وحاول اختباره بالمرور بالمناطق المعارضة للملك
5. Princess Flavia: خطيبة الملك، اندهشت من تغيير تصرفات ومظهر الملك
6. Duke Michael: فوجئ بوجود رودلف في العاصمة ، قام باختطاف اخيه
7. Lord Topham: أحد السياسيين الانجليز والذي لم يتعرف علي رودلف بسبب ضعف بصره
8. A small girl: ابنة حارس البوابة ، سمحت لرودف بالمرور
9. Max Holf: احد حراس مايكل ، واخو يوهان خادم مايكل

Chapter in points:

A) The old streets of Strelsau:

1. Rassendyll rode on through the streets towards the palace dressed as the King of Ruritania.
2. Marshal Strakencz gave an order to his men and they entered a poor part of the town:
 - The Marshal told Rassendyll that this was a better route.
 - Rassendyll thought that this was not a better way for the King.
 - In this place the people were loyal to Duke Michael.
3. Rassendyll was angry that the Marshal wanted to test him:
 - He told the Marshal to ask the soldiers to ride ahead of him as he didn't need them.
 - He told the Marshal to wait until he continued through the old town alone.
 - He wanted the people to see that their King trusted them.
 - He wanted to act like a king and all of his people should like him, not just a few.
4. Sapt looked anxious as he thought that this was a very bad idea as he knew that the people in the old town support the Duke and he is afraid that if Rassendyll was killed, his position would become difficult.

5. Rassendyll was alone on his horse:

- His uniform was white and clean compared to the old buildings around.
- The narrow streets were lined with hundreds of people:
 - Some people talked quietly and they cheered.
 - Some were surprised that the King was on his own and his skin was white.
 - Some were quiet and angry and were putting paintings of the Duke in their windows.

6. Rassendyll reached the palace safely and Sapt had an expression of relief that he was still alive.

B) The coronation:

1. Some soldiers led Rassendyll inside a beautiful building full of many people:

- He met Princess Flavia who was a beautiful young woman with red hair.
- He saw Michael who was a man with red cheeks, dark eyes and dark hair.

2. Rassendyll remembered the ceremonies at the coronation:

- The golden crown was placed on his head and he was asked to read out some promises.
- Some beautiful music was played when someone announced that Rudolf the Fifth was now King of Ruritania.
- Rassendyll stood in the palace greeting the ambassadors and people who came to see him.
- He went in a coach around the streets with the Princess.

3. When Michael saw Rassendyll, his face became white as he didn't expect that the King would come to Strelsau. He thought he should be poisoned.

4. No one realised that Rassendyll was not the real King except Michael:

- Michael shook Rassendyll's hands with anger greeting him coldly without looking at his eyes.
- He got news from Zenda that all's well.

5. Rassendyll became worried when a man from England, Lord Topham, came to greet him, but his eyes were so poor that he did not notice him.

6. After the coronation, Rassendyll went in a coach around the streets with the Princess:

- People wondered when their wedding was.
- Flavia told Rassendyll he looked different today as he was more tired, serious, and thinner.
- She told Rassendyll that he really changed by his visit to the old town alone.
- She said the people must appreciate what he did as they knew that the King trusted them.

C) After the coronation:

1. Rassendyll was exhausted while Sapt and Fritz were very happy that their plan succeeded.
2. Fritz told Rassendyll that he mustn't try too hard:
 - It was not a good idea to ride alone through the old town.
 - Duke Michael wouldn't like it if Rassendyll became too popular with his people.
3. Sapt told Rassendyll that Michael had news from Zenda and he was planning something so he must leave the country as soon as he could.
4. Sapt copied the King's signature on a form to give Rassendyll a permit to leave the country:
 - The city gates would all be closed at this time of day.
 - No one could leave without a permit from the King.
 - Michael might try to prevent them.
5. Sapt reminded them of the plan:
 - Fritz would tell everyone that the King went to bed.
 - No one should wake him up until nine o'clock tomorrow morning.
 - Fritz mustn't let Michael into the King's room even if his life depended on it.
6. Rassendyll put on a big coat and a hat to cover his face and hair and set off through a panel in the wall which led to a dark passage:
 - Sapt knew all about this secret passage from the old King's time.
 - Sapt unlocked the door of the passage and they went out into a quiet street which ran along the back of the palace gardens.
 - A man was waiting for them with two horses. They climbed onto the horses and rode away.
7. The town was busy and full of noise, but they took the quiet back streets.
8. They reached one of the tall wooden gates:
 - Sapt knocked on the gate and a girl of about fourteen appeared.
 - They were relieved as they knew they can trick the girl easily and there was a little danger.
 - She told them that her father was not here as he went to see the King.
 - Sapt gave the girl the signed form and a coin and took the key from her hand.
9. When they were outside the city, there was little danger, as everyone was in the streets celebrating the coronation.
10. They stopped at an inn so that their horses could have a drink so they lost half an hour.

D) The failure of the plan because all's well:

- 1. After forty kilometres from the city, Sapt suddenly stopped when he heard something:**
 - They could hear the noise of horses coming towards them.
 - They were lucky that the wind is blowing towards them so they can hear them.
 - Sapt put his ear to the ground to know how many persons were following them and how far they were.
 - Sapt said that two horses were following them about two kilometres behind.
 - They went on quickly and reached the forest of Zenda and stopped at a fork in the road.
 - One road to the right went deep into the forest; the other to the left went outside the forest towards the town and the castle.
- 2. Sapt asked Rassendyll to get off his horse and waited quietly in the trees:**
 - Sapt wanted to see who the followers were and where they were going.
 - They saw the Duke and a strong-looking man called Max Holf, a brother to Johann.
- 3. Max told the Duke that they needn't go to the hunting lodge because all's well:**
 - They would go to the castle where they can learn the truth.
 - They had already got the King according to their plan.
 - If all wasn't well, it would be a trap if they went to the hunting lodge.
- 4. Sapt didn't shoot the Duke as he realised it would not help the King at this moment.**
- 5. They reached the hunting lodge:**
 - The lodge was dark and quiet and no one came out to meet them.
 - Sapt pointed at five or six torn and dirty handkerchiefs on the ground which he used to tie up the old woman.
 - The front door to the lodge was not locked and they went into the dining room.
 - The door to the cellar was open and there was no sign for Josef or the King.
 - There were a lot of things on the floor of the dark room, as if there had been a fight.
 - Rassendyll held up the candle and saw a body in one corner.
 - It was Josef and he was dead.

E) The game continued:

1. They walked with heavy hearts back from the cellar to the dining room because they knew that the Duke had got the King.
2. Rassendyll suggested that they get back and collect every soldier in Strelsau to catch Michael before the King is killed.
3. Sapt refused Rassendyll's opinion as he understood what happened:
 - It was Johann's mother who told Michael's men about the King.
 - They came to the hunting lodge to kidnap the King and they found him in that room in the cellar.
 - Sapt thought that Michael was worried during the coronation and thought about how to worry the Duke more.
 - Sapt told Rassendyll that they would go back to Strelsau as the King would be back in the capital again tomorrow.
 - Sapt told Rassendyll that they would continue with the game they started.
 - Rassendyll would be the King again.

Critical thinking questions:

1. Why do you think Rassendyll was worried when he saw Antoinette de Mauban?
 - He thought that she recognized him and she would shout saying that he wasn't the real King.
2. Why do you think Antoinette did not cry out that he was not the King?
 - She didn't know Rassendyll. And she didn't know that he looked like the King.
3. Why do you think the Marshal gave his men an order to get into the old part of the town during the procession?
 - He wanted to make sure how the new King would behave and if he feared his people.
4. People in the old part showed different attitudes towards the King. Why do you think so?
 - As not all of them have the same political view. Most support Michael but there are few with the King.
5. Do you think it was a good idea for Rassendyll to give due care to the poor? Why?
 - Yes. If he was to be a king, he must be a king for all people not just a few.
6. Why do you think Sapt was worried when the Rassendyll insisted on riding through the old town alone?
 - Rassendyll might be killed and this would ruin all their plan.
7. Why do you think Rassendyll insisted on riding through the streets of the old part alone?
 - He felt angry that the Marshal wanted to test him and he wanted people to trust him.
8. What do you think Rassendyll meant when he made a comparison between his white and clean uniform and the old buildings in the old town?
 - He meant to show the sharp contrast between the lives of the rich and those of the poor. He wanted to tell us how much the poor people suffered in that area.

9. Rassendyll rides alone through the old town. Do you think Rudolf Elphberg would have done the same? Why? / Why not?
 - I don't think so. Rudolf Elphberg didn't care about poor people. He was only interested in good food and hunting.
10. Why do you think that Rassendyll remembered very little of the coronation?
 - There were too many things and people to remember what happened in detail.
11. Why do you think Rassendyll felt confident during the coronation?
 - As no one recognized that he wasn't the real King even Michael who recognized him kept silent.
12. How do you think Rassendyll was lucky when Lord Topham from England came to greet him?
 - He had poor eyesight so he couldn't recognize him.
13. Why do you think Michael's face turn white when he saw the pretend king?
 - He didn't expect the King to attend the coronation as he should be poisoned.
14. Did Michael realise that this was not the real King? How do you know?
 - Yes. He greeted Rassendyll coldly and angrily and didn't look at his eyes. Also he had news from Zenda that 'all is well.'
15. Why do you think Michael was angry when he congratulated the King?
 - He knew that Rassendyll wasn't the real King and he couldn't do anything.
16. According to Fritz, Michael would not like the King to be popular with his people. Why do you think so?
 - Yes. Michael depended that his popularity among the poor people would help him to be the King so he can't lose that for Rassendyll.
17. Was Fritz right on criticizing Rassendyll when he entered the old part? Why?
 - No. He wasn't worried about him or their plan but what worried him is that Michael would be angry. But the King should be a king for all people.
18. Why do you think Flavia was surprised when she heard what the pretend King did in the old town?
 - It was the first time for him to enter the old part.
19. Why do you think it was important for Fritz to stay in the King's bedroom while Sapt and Rassendyll went to Zenda?
 - To prevent anyone from entering and knowing that the King left the palace.
20. Sapt and Rassendyll had to leave the city at once after the coronation. Do you agree? Why?
 - Yes. Michael got news from Zenda and he must have been planning something.
21. Why do you think Rassendyll refused to sign the form himself?
 - He was afraid to get involved in anything illegal. And anyone could realise it was not the signature of the real King.
22. Why do you think Rassendyll and Sapt left the palace secretly?
 - They don't want anyone to see them and knew that Rassendyll wasn't the real King.
23. Why do you think Sapt gave Rassendyll a big coat and hat to wear before leaving the palace?
 - To cover his face and hair so no one could recognize him.
24. Why do you think Rassendyll remained low on the horse after leaving the palace?
 - Not to be recognized by anyone.
25. Why do you think the city gates were closed after the coronation?
 - It was night so all gates were closed to protect the city from thieves.

26. Why do you think the girl's father ordered her not to open the gate for anyone?
 - He went to see the coronation so he wanted his girl to do his duty.
27. At the gate, the guard wasn't there. Do you think Sapt felt angry? Why?
 - No. It would be easier for him to trick the girl and leave the city.
28. Why do you think Sapt give the girl the permit and a coin?
 - To trick her to let her open the gate.
29. Why do you think Sapt and Rassendyll stopped many times during their journey to Zenda?
 - To let their horses rest and to make sure that nobody was following them.
30. Why do you think Sapt stopped at the fork on the road to Zenda?
 - He wanted to know who was following them and where they were going.
31. Why do you think the Duke and Max were going to Zenda?
 - To know what really happened in the hunting lodge.
32. "I think we should go to the castle where we can learn the truth." Which truth do you think Max wanted to know?
 - If their men kidnapped the King or not.
33. "If all is well, why go there." What do you think Max meant by such words?
 - If they got the King, it would be useless if they went to the hunting lodge.
34. "And if all isn't well, I fear there'll be a trap." What do you think there refers to? Who do you think could set a trap there?
 - It referred to the hunting lodge. And he feared the King would know their plot and set a trap for them there.
35. Why do you think Sapt did not kill Michael although it was easy for him to do so?
 - He knew it would not be useful for the King.
36. Sapt thought it must have been the old woman who told Michael's men about what had happened in the hunting lodge. Do you agree? Why?
 - Yes. He knew that they found and freed her when he saw the torn handkerchief thrown outside the lodge.
37. How do you think Josef met his end?
 - Michael's men killed him when he tried to protect the King.
38. Who do you think came to the hunting lodge during the coronation, kidnaped the King, Killed Josef and set the old woman free?
 - Michael's men.
39. Why do you think Michael's men killed Josef?
 - He resisted them and they didn't want anyone to know that they kidnapped the King.
40. Why do you think Sapt and Rassendyll had to leave the hunting lodge soon after finding out the King was kidnapped?
 - It was Michael's land and it was very dangerous.
41. When do you think Rassendyll understood what the message 'all is well' meant?
 - When he found that the King was kidnapped and Josef was killed.
42. Why do you think Rassendyll wanted to get back and collect every soldier in Strelsau?
 - He thought Michael would kill the King.

43. According to Sapt Michael was worried during the coronation. Why do you think he was worried?
- He thought that the King knew his plot and sent Rassendyll to attend the coronation instead of him to trick Michael.
44. What do you think would happen if Rassendyll didn't get back to the palace in Strelsau?
- Michael would kill the real King and be a king.
45. How did Duke Michael and his men know that the King was in the cellar?
- From Johann's mother.
46. Rassendyll suggested going back to Strelsau and collecting every soldier to catch Michael before he killed the King. Do you think this was a good suggestion? Why? / Why not?
- I think it wasn't because Michael was leading the army, so it wasn't easy to defeat him. And they didn't know then where the King was hidden.



Chapter 4

I) The setting of the chapter:

1. Place: Ruritania (the hunting lodge \ the palace \ the street \ Flavia's house)
2. Time: Nineteenth century \ 1890s

II) The characters:

1. Rudolf Rassendyll: بطل القصة ، بدأ التصرف جيدا بمحاولة زيادة شعبيته
2. Sapt: اقنع رودلف بضرورة اكمال دوره كملك لمواجهة مايكل
3. Fritz: اصطحب رودلف في جولة في العاصمة
4. Freyler: احد خدم سابيت في القصر
5. Flavia's servant: احضر رسالة الي رودلف
6. De Gautet: احد الجنود الستة ، من فرنسا
7. Bersonin: احد الجنود الستة ، من بلجيكا
8. Detchard: احد الجنود الستة ، من انجلترا
9. Flavia: قامت باستضافة رودلف وفوجنت بتغير شكله وتعامله مع مايكل
10. Michael: غضب جدا لأنه يعلم ان رودلف افسد خطته كما انه غير قادر علي فعل اي شيء

Chapter in points:

A) Rassendyll was persuaded:

1. Rassendyll refused to return to the capital again:
 - He told Sapt that he was mad as the plan was too dangerous.
 - The Duke and all his men knew where the real King was.
 - Rassendyll still had doubts as someone in Strelsau would realise he was not the real King.
 - Flavia told him that he had changed.
2. Rassendyll agreed to continue the game:
 - He realised that Sapt was right when he said they got them (Michael and his men).
 - They couldn't say anything without showing their guilt.
 - They couldn't say this wasn't the real King because we kidnapped him and killed his servant.
 - They couldn't kill the King as they know that Rassendyll would stay King.
3. Sapt told Rassendyll that they must have a King in Strelsau, or the city would belong to Michael.
4. Sapt told Rassendyll if the King was dead he would be a king forever.

B) A small fight:

1. Before they left the lodge, they saw Michael's men:
 - A big group of men came down the road from Zenda.
 - They were carrying spades, coming to the house to hide their evil work and bury Josef.
2. Rassendyll suggested killing some of these men as they killed Josef:
 - They went out of a back door and climbed onto their horses with swords ready.
 - They drove their horses fast to the front of the building.
 - The men looked shocked to see them and were not prepared.
 - Rassendyll knocked one man off his horse, then hit another man with his sword.
 - There were people trying to trap him, but saw a gap and escaped towards the forest.
 - Although his horse was fast, he heard a shot and felt a terrible pain in his finger.
3. He caught up with Sapt who praised him for his bravery.
4. Rassendyll told Sapt that the men knew that he was the King which would worry Michael.

C) Back to Strelsau:

1. They stopped so that Sapt could put a bandage on Rassendyll's finger.
2. They arrived at a farm and Rassendyll covered his face, saying to the farmer that he had a bad tooth to hide his identity.
3. The farmer was kind. He gave them food and let them rest but they couldn't wait.
4. When they reached the palace, a servant called Freyler was waiting for them.
5. When Freyler noticed that the King was hurt, Sapt told him that:
 - The King caught his finger in a door to hide that he was shot in a fight.
 - He told him not to say anything about this. All young men liked to ride their horses and the King was one of them.
 - He wanted the servant to think that the King was out riding for fun. He didn't want him to know anything about where they were.
 - Sapt said that Freyler was a good servant, but it was best not to trust even the best of men.
6. When Fritz saw them, he thought that Rassendyll was the King and bowed down in front of him.
7. Princess Flavia sent a servant to find out how the King was feeling after the coronation.
8. Rassendyll told the servant to send the Princess his thanks as he had never felt better in his life.

D) A heavy duty:

1. Rassendyll told Fritz that the King was not dead but Duke Michael was holding him prisoner.
2. The next day, Sapt took three hours to tell Rassendyll about the King's duties:
 - Rassendyll thought it was very hard to pretend to be a King but he felt relieved as Sapt stayed with him to tell him what he ought to do and what he ought not to do.
 - He was worried when he met the French ambassador as he asked him a question which he could not answer, but Sapt told him the real King wouldn't answer either.
 - He told everyone that he could not write because of his finger, so many important documents were not completed.
 - Rassendyll asked for a new servant instead of Josef not to recognise him.
3. Fritz wanted to attack Michael but Sapt convinced him that they would take things slowly.
4. Fritz described their situation as a stalemate:
 - If Michael killed the King, he knew that Rassendyll would stay as King forever.
 - Michael couldn't accuse Rassendyll of anything because people would know that he kidnapped the King.
 - They couldn't accuse Michael in public without admitting that Rassendyll was not the real King.
 - Therefore, neither Michael nor they can do anything.
5. Fritz said that half of Michael's Six Men were in Strelsau with the Duke so Sapt told him that the other half was guarding the King.
6. The Six Men:
 - Fritz said they were six special soldiers who Michael kept in his house. They were completely loyal to him and would do whatever Michael asked them to do even killing the King.
 - Three were from Ruritania: Rupert Hentzau, Lauengram and Krafstein.
 - Three foreigners: De Gautet was French, Bersonin was Belgian, and Detchard was British.
7. Sapt hoped the Six Men to be the men they saw at the hunting lodge because there'd only be four and not six.

E) Rassendyll's secret plan:

- 1. Rassendyll decided to act like a real king by keeping secrets even from the people he trusted:**
 - He planned to make himself as popular as he could, and say nothing bad about Michael.
 - He hoped to stop the poor people of Strelsau from thinking about him badly.
 - If there were a fight, people would not follow Michael who would not grow stronger.
 - The more people saw him, the more they would realise he cared about them.
 - He was not going to be a distant king who people only heard about.
- 2. Rassendyll tried to increase his popularity:**
 - He rode his horse through the park with Fritz, waving to everyone who bowed to him.
 - He stopped to buy flowers from a poor young girl and gave her a gold coin. This attracted a lot of interest, and hundreds of people were following him.
 - He went to the home of Princess Flavia because she was popular and the people seemed pleased that he went to see her so he could have her support.
- 3. Rassendyll went to Flavia's house:**
 - He was very careful when he talked to the Princess. He needed the Princess to trust him, but he did not want to say too much or she would realise he was not the real King.
 - When Rassendyll said that the nearer Michael was to him, the better:
 - Flavia thought he meant to watch him and knew what he was doing.
 - Rassendyll said he would like Michael to be near because he was his half-brother. They were family and needed to help and support each other.
 - She looked strangely because she knew how much the King and the Duke hated each other.
- 4. There was a loud cheer from the streets outside and the Princess said the Duke was coming.**
- 5. Rassendyll's first gross mistake:**
 - He and Flavia heard steps outside the door and expected Michael to enter, but then the steps stopped, so they continued to talk again.
 - Rassendyll made a serious mistake by letting Michael wait outside the room for a long time and not asking him to come in.
 - Flavia told Rassendyll that the Duke would be very angry that he was waiting all this time.
 - To justify his mistake, Rassendyll said he was never very good at remembering all the rules and would go himself to get Michael at once.

6. Rassendyll opened the door and went out of the guest room to greet Michael.
7. He was sitting at a table looking very angry. All his men were standing next to him.
8. Rassendyll apologised that he didn't know Michael was waiting.
9. Michael was not good at hiding his feelings, and Rassendyll could see that he was angry.

F) The poisonous animal:

1. When Michael told Rassendyll that he was hurt, Rassendyll told him that an animal bit him.
2. Rassendyll said there was no danger from the bite.
3. He said that he didn't kill the animal to see if his bite was poisonous.
4. He threatened the Duke that if the animal was poisonous, he would be knocked on the head.
5. The Duke jumped to his feet and walked towards the door angrily:
 - Rassendyll told him how fine his soldiers were and thanked him for the splendid coronation.
 - He thanked him for the great time he had at the hunting lodge in the forest.
6. Michael told Rassendyll that three of his friends would like to meet him.
7. Michael said that these gentlemen were the most loyal and honest of the King's servants.
8. They bowed before the King one at a time:
 - De Gautet, a tall, thin French man with straight hair.
 - Bersonin, the Belgian, who was large and about thirty years old.
 - Detchard, the Englishman, had a thin face, strong shoulders and short hair like a good fighter and a bad character.
9. Rassendyll spoke to Detchard in English with a pretend foreign accent, but he knew that Detchard knew his secret when he smiled when Rassendyll spoke.
10. Rassendyll knew that his life would be in danger from Michael's Six Men.

Critical thinking questions:

1. Why do you think Sapt wanted Rassendyll to stay King?
 - To prevent Michael from killing the real King and take the country.
2. Do you think Sapt's plan to let Rassendyll stay king was too dangerous? Why?
 - Yes. Michael and his men knew the truth that he wasn't the real King.
3. Princess Flavia noticed that the King had changed. Do you think this could affect Sapt's plan?
 - Yes. She might know that he wasn't the real King.

4. According to Sapt, it was necessary to have a king in Strelsau. Do you know why?
 - If there wasn't a king, Michael would control the country.
5. Why do you think the presence of Rassendyll in Strelsau would save the King's life?
 - Michael wouldn't kill the real King as he knew that Rassendyll would be a king forever.
6. Sapt suggested if the real King was dead, Rassendyll would stay as a king. Do you think this was possible?
 - No. It was not his right and Michael wouldn't leave him.
7. Why do you think Michael's men came to the hunting lodge with spades?
 - To hide their evil work and bury Josef.
8. What does Rassendyll mean by saying that some of those evil men should join Josef?
 - He means that some of Michael's men should be killed to revenge Josef.
9. According to Sapt, the fight around the hunting lodge would worry Michael. Do you agree? Why?
 - Yes. Michel's men would know that the King was at the hunting lodge and Michael sent them to kill the King.
10. How do you think Rassendyll's fighting skills helped him in the hunting lodge?
 - He could face Michael's men, killed two of them with his sword then escaped.
11. Why do you think Rassendyll covered his face from the farmer?
 - To hide his face as he looked like the real King.
12. Why do you think Sapt and Rassendyll couldn't wait for long at the farm on their way back from the hunting lodge?
 - They had to arrive before 9 o'clock, before anyone realized that the King left the palace.
13. Why do you think Sapt and Rassendyll's arrival at the gates was well timed?
 - They arrived early while all people were sleeping after the night of the coronation.
14. Why do you think silence prevailed Strelsau streets the day after the coronation?
 - All people were resting after the excitement of the coronation.
15. Why did not Sapt tell the servant about the real reason for the King's hurt finger?
 - He wanted the servant to think that the King was injured on the door not in a fight to hide that he was coming from Zenda.
16. Why does Sapt say to the servant at the secret door, 'All young men like to ride their horses now and then, so why not the King?'
 - Sapt wants the servant to think that the King was just out for fun. He doesn't want him to know anything about where they were.
17. What does Sapt mean he says, 'It's sometimes best not to trust even the best of men'?
 - There are somethings which must be said to anyone even if they are trusted especially information about the country.
18. Why do you think Sapt and Rassendyll get into the palace through the secret passage?
 - No to make anyone realise that the real King was outside the palace.
19. Why do you think Fritz thought Rassendyll was the real King when he returned from Zenda?
 - He was asleep and Rassendyll looked much like the King.
20. Show that it was too hard for anyone to discover the real identity of Rudolf Rassendyll.
 - When Rassendyll returned to the palace, Fritz didn't recognize him and he bowed to him thinking that he was the real King.

21. A king's life is quite hard, but a pretend king's life is even harder. Show how.
 - As there were a lot of rules and duties and Rassendyll didn't know anything about that.
22. Do you think Rassendyll couldn't really sign the documents? What do you think was the real reason?
 - No. He was just hiding that he wasn't the real King.
23. How do you think Rassendyll justify not signing the documents?
 - His finger was injured in a door.
24. Do you agree that Rassendyll's injured finger served him well? Why? / Why not?
 - Yes. When Rassendyll was asked to sign some important documents, he told everyone that he couldn't write because of his finger. That must have served him well as his handwriting was different to that of the King's.
25. Why do you think Rassendyll asked for a new servant who had never met the real king?
 - Not to recognize that he wasn't the real King.
26. Why do you think three of Michael's Six Men were there in Zenda?
 - He brought those three to face Rassendyll and the other three were guarding the King.
27. Fritz said, "So no one can do anything! It's a stalemate." What do you think Fritz meant by this?
 - Neither Sapt and Fritz nor Michael can do anything as they would admit what they had really done.
28. Why do you think Michael had six special soldiers?
 - To do all his evil deeds.
29. Why do you think Rassendyll kept his plan to make himself popular as a secret?
 - Sapt and Fritz criticized him before when he went into the old part and he wanted to act like a real King to be able to face Michael.
30. How do you think Rassendyll could enjoy his game in Strelsau?
 - He thought it would be good to face Michael and make sure he wouldn't grow more popular.
31. Why do you think Rassendyll decided to visit the old part of the town so often?
 - To increase his popularity and make people know that he trusted them.
32. Why do you think it was important for Rassendyll to make himself popular?
 - As if there were a fight between him and Michael. People wouldn't follow Michael and support him.
33. How do you think Rassendyll could stop the poorer people thinking badly of him?
 - He wouldn't criticise Michael and he would visit the old part more often.
34. Can you think of other ways Rassendyll could do to make himself more popular?
 - He could listen to poor people, help solve their problems, share their bad and happy moments.
35. Why do you think the pretend King (Rassendyll) had to be very careful while talking with Princess Flavia?
 - He might say something wrong so she would realise that he wasn't the real King.
36. Why did Michael go to visit Flavia?
 - He might want to convince her to marry him so he could be a king if she became a queen.
37. "That's good. The nearer he is to me, the better." What do you think Rassendyll meant by these words?
 - He wanted to watch him but he said he wanted Michael to support him as they were brothers.
38. Do you think Michael could get into the room directly?
 - No. It was a rule not to enter without a permission from the King and he couldn't break that.
39. Why do you think Michael wanted to introduce his soldiers to Rassendyll at Flavia's palace?
 - To threaten Rassendyll that they would kill him.

40. Despite being Englishman, Rassendyll spoke to Detchard in English with pretend foreign accent. Why do you think he did so?
- To hide that he was from England.
41. How do you think Rassendyll felt after meeting some of Michael's dangerous men?
- He felt unsafe as those men would kill him.



Chapter 5

I) The setting of the chapter:

1. Place: Ruritania (Flavia's house \ the palace \ the summer house)
2. Time: Nineteenth century \ 1890s

II) The characters:

1. Rudolf Rassendyll: بطل القصة، تصرف بشجاعة في مواجهة رجال مايكل وبدأ الإعداد لإنقاذ الملك
2. Sapt: اقنع رودلف ان حياته في خطر ، وذهب معه للمنزل الصيفي
3. Lauengram: احد رجال مايكل ، مجرم من روريتانيا
4. Krafstein: احد رجال مايكل ، مجرم من روريتانيا
5. Rupert Hentzau: احد رجال مايكل ، مجرم من روريتانيا ومسئول عن القلعة
6. Antoinette de Mauban: اجبرها مايكل علي ارسال خطاب لرودلف لنصب فخ له ولكنها حذرتة وساعدته علي الهرب
7. Detchard: حاول مهاجمة رودلف في المنزل الصيفي ولكنه اصابه بطلق ناري
8. Flavia: حذرها رودلف من المخاطر المحيطة ، وحذرها من تصديق مايكل
9. Strakencz: خطط رودلف ان يتولى المارشال حماية الاميرة وكذلك التصرف في حالة فشل خطة انقاذ الملك

Chapter in points:

A) Responsibilities not opportunities:

1. Flavia warned Rassendyll to be careful as his life was important to the people of Ruritania.
2. Rassendyll thought to tell the princess the truth:
 - He wondered if he was wrong to pretend to be the King.
 - He remembered Rose's words that position in society brought with it responsibilities.
 - He had always wanted to have a quiet life, but he realised how many responsibilities he now had here in Ruritania:
 - He had to run the country, meet important people and sign documents.
 - He had to plan to rescue the real King.
 - He had to face Michael and protect Flavia.
3. Over the next few weeks, Rassendyll was pleased that no one noticed he was not the real King:
 - He looked like the real King.
 - He learnt a lot about how a country was run, but he made mistakes.
 - He became very good at pretending he had forgotten rules or people.
 - He hoped his growing popularity with the people would help them to forgive his occasional bad decisions.

4. Sapt told Rassendyll some important news:

- They knew that the King was at the Castle of Zenda:
 - They found out that the rest of the Six Men were at the castle.
 - People said the drawbridge was always kept up which was not normal.
 - No one went into the building without the permission of Rupert or Michael.

B) Rassendyll in danger:

1. Rassendyll wanted to go to the castle to rescue the King.
2. Sapt told Rassendyll that he would stay in the castle forever if he went there to rescue the King.
3. Sapt told Rassendyll that he asked six people to follow and guard him but Rassendyll protested that he didn't need help and he could look after himself.
4. Sapt told him that De Gautet, Bersonin and Detchard were in Strelsau, and anyone of them could catch him so if he disappeared, the game would be over and Michael would be the king.

C) Antoinette's first letter:

1. Sapt gave Rassendyll a letter that seemed from a woman due to the writing:
 - At the end of New Avenue, there was a house in a large garden.
 - There was a wall around the garden with a gate at the back.
 - At midnight tonight, go through the gate. There was a statue of a horse.
 - Turn right and walk twenty metres. There were six steps to a summer house.
 - Go into this house and someone would tell you something very important about your life.
 - You must be alone. If you did not come, your life would be in danger.
 - Do not show this letter to anyone, or a loyal woman would be in great danger: Michael would punish her.
 - Ask colonel Sapt if you didn't believe this.
 - Ask him what woman had been a guest of the Duke and her name began with A.
2. Sapt and Rassendyll thought that Michael had written the letter to trap him.
3. Rassendyll was about to throw the letter in the bin, when he saw some writing on the other side telling Rassendyll to ask Sapt about a woman.
4. Rassendyll said it must be Antoinette de Mauban and told Sapt all he knew about the woman.

5. Sapt told Rassendyll that:

- Antoinette came to Ruritania with her servants as a guest of Michael.
- She had a great argument with him, and was staying somewhere in Strelsau.

D) Following the letter:

1. Rassendyll decided to go to the Summer House:

- Either he went to the house, or he went back to England as they didn't have much time.
- Every day they left the King imprisoned there was more danger so they must move quickly.
- Antoinette would be useful if she had information about Michael.

2. Sapt knew he could not change Rassendyll's decision so he agreed with him reluctantly:

- Sapt told Rassendyll that he would wait him outside the gate of the house.
- Rassendyll opened the gate into a leafy garden, saw the statue of the horse and followed the directions given in the letter. Then a woman whispered to shut the door of a room.
- The room was empty except for a small iron table, two chairs and was lit by a small candle.

3. Inside the room, Rassendyll saw Antoinette and her servant:

- She knew he was not the King and she wrote that letter to him at the Duke's orders.
- It was a trap and they had little time as in twenty minutes three men would come to kill him.
- She told him that he was not safe in the city as Michael's men were following his guards.
- She told him about the Duke's plan:
 - He would kill Rassendyll any time he was alone.
 - He would take his body into the old town.
 - It would be found and Michael would arrest Sapt and Fritz for murdering the King.
 - A messenger would be sent to Zenda and the real King would be murdered too.
 - The Duke would then become King.

4. Antoinette told Rassendyll that she helped him as:

- She didn't like to see people being killed.
- She wanted to prevent Michael from marrying Flavia.

5. To help him escape, Antoinette told Rassendyll to go past the summer house for about a hundred metres where there would be a ladder against the wall.

6. She said that she would tell the Duke's men that Rassendyll never came.

E) Bravery, resourcefulness and luck:

1. Antoinette stopped in the middle of her sentence before telling Rassendyll about the place of the King as she heard the voice of Michael's men.
2. Detchard asked Rassendyll to let them in but Antoinette told him not to trust them.
3. Detchard said they could offer Rassendyll a safe journey to the border and fifty thousand English pounds as a bribe.
4. Rassendyll told the men to give him a minute to think and began his plan to escape:
 - He told Antoinette and her servant to stand close to the wall, away from the door.
 - He picked up the iron table and held it in front of him as a shield.
 - He told the men that he accepted their offer and asked them to open the door as it opened outwards and might hit them.
 - As soon as the door was opened, Rassendyll ran at the men as fast as he could.
 - All three men fired their guns, but Rassendyll was protected by the table.
 - The men were standing on the steps of house, so the table hit them and they fell down.
 - Rassendyll fell down the steps, but managed to get up fast running away, firing his gun.
 - He found the ladder as Antoinette said and climbed over the wall.
 - Sapt was firing shots to help Rassendyll then they rode quickly back to the palace.
5. Next day, Sapt read the latest report from the Chief of Police:
 - The police report said that the Duke of Strelsau left the capital by the road to Zenda.
 - He was followed by De Gautet, Bersonin and Detchard, who had a bandage around his arm.
 - The people were not happy that the King hadn't married the Princess. If they didn't marry, it would be better if the Princess married the Duke.
 - The King was having a ball tonight for the Princess prepared by Fritz.

F) The ball:

1. The ball was a great success:
 - Rassendyll sat with Flavia and some other guests in a small room by the palace gardens.
 - The Princess told Rassendyll that everyone said he had done a very good job as a King.
 - He told her that he realised that it was true that 'a person who had a position in society had responsibilities.'

- The second gross mistake:
 - Rassendyll made a big mistake as he forgot that he was pretending to be a king.
 - He told the Princess he never thought of responsibilities as he was younger.
 - He didn't think he needed to worry about society.
 - He thought that was someone else's job.
 - Instead of covering up his mistake, Rassendyll wanted to tell the Princess the truth:
 - He thought it was not fair to marry her.
 - She was kind and clever and she was going to marry the King.
 - She should know what happened to her future husband.
 - She should know all about the game.
2. Before telling Flavia the truth, they heard footsteps in the garden outside the room.
 3. It was Sapt who told Rassendyll that someone wanted to see him.
 4. Sapt was angry and interrupted Rassendyll before telling Flavia the truth.
 5. Rassendyll realised that his game had gone too far to go back:
 - When he failed to tell Flavia the truth.
 - When he met important people at the ball, he knew that he could not tell anyone who he really was or they would think he was mad.

G) Rassendyll can't remain a King forever:

1. Sapt told Rassendyll he was a good man:
 - Rassendyll refused neither to remain king nor to marry Flavia.
 - Everyone thought he was the King, even the Princess.
 - He could even arrange to kill the Duke and the real King and be a king forever.
2. Rassendyll said he shouldn't pretend to be anything:
 - It wasn't fair for the people of Ruritania and it wasn't fair for the Princess.
 - He couldn't live as a king and leave the real King imprisoned in Zenda.
 - Michael wouldn't leave him stay as a king and would try to kill him.
 - They must go to Zenda and rescue the King.

3. Rassendyll visited the Princess to warn her that the situation in Ruritania was not good:
 - She told him that she received two letters.
 - One was from Michael, who invited her to visit Zenda.
 - Although she didn't know who sent the second, Rassendyll knew it was from Antoinette as it was the same writing as the letter he received.
 - Antoinette warned Flavia that:
 - She did not want her to fall into the power of the Duke.
 - She warned her not to accept any invitation or to go anywhere without many guards.
 - She asked her to show this letter to the leader of Ruritania.
 - Antoinette might want to make Flavia suspect Rassendyll and the whole situation.
4. Rassendyll told her that a friend of his sent the letter and asked her to say that she was ill so she couldn't go to Zenda.
5. He told her he didn't mind anything to keep her safe and ordered guards to watch her.
6. Rassendyll visited Marshal Strakencz as he had to trust him to keep the future of Ruritania:
 - He asked him to guard the Princess and not to allow any of the Duke's men to visit her because he was worried about the Duke's ambitions.
 - He told him that he would leave Strelsau for a few days.
 - Every evening, Rassendyll would send Strakencz a message.
 - If he didn't get a message for three days, he had the authority to say that he was the head of Strelsau.
 - Strakencz must ask the Duke to allow him to see the King. If he didn't, Strakencz must say that the King's dead and their new ruler would be Princess Flavia.

Critical thinking questions:

1. Sapt brought news that the King was at the castle. Do you think Rassendyll was interested in that news?
 - Yes. He wanted to rescue the King and return home.
2. Why do you think Rassendyll wanted to leave for Zenda as soon as possible?
 - He wasn't convinced of being a king and leaving the real King imprisoned.
3. Why do you think Sapt rejected Rassendyll's idea of going to Zenda?
 - As Michael's men would either kill or imprison him.

4. Sapt called Rupert, Lauengram and Krafstein the three biggest criminals in Ruritania. Do you agree or not? Why?
 - Yes. They are Michael's men who would do all illegal and criminal deeds for him.
5. Why did Sapt suspect Antoinette's real intention to send that letter?
 - As she was Michael's friend and guest.
6. How did Sapt know about Antoinette de Mauban in your opinion?
 - He might had spies in Strelsau to know what Michael was doing.
7. Why do you think Sapt rejected Rassendyll's idea of going to the summer house?
 - He was sure it was a trap from Michael.
8. Why do you think Rassendyll insisted on going to the summer house?
 - He didn't accept being in a stalemate and wanted to make any move to rescue the King.
9. Why do you think Antoinette wanted to help Rassendyll in the summer house?
 - She wanted to stop Michael from marrying Flavia and to prevent people being killed.
10. Rassendyll's fighting skills helped him in the summer house. Do you think so?
 - Yes. He could fight the three men and shoot Detchard before he escaped safely.
11. What do you think of the offer which Detchard talked about?
 - It was a trick as they wanted Rassendyll's body to throw it in the old part.
12. Do you think the information in the report from the Chief of Police was interesting to Rassendyll?
 - Yes. He knew that Detchard was injured and Michael escaped to the castle.
13. Why do you think the people of Strelsau were unhappy as the King did not marry the Princess?
 - Some people who support the King knew that if the King didn't marry Flavia, Michael would marry her.
14. Why do you think a ball was planned to the Princess in the palace?
 - To make Rassendyll ask her to marry him.
15. Telling the Princess that when he was younger he thought he didn't need to worry about society, Rassendyll made a mistake. Do you think it was really a mistake?
 - Yes. He was supposed to be the King and it was his duty to care for his society.
16. Why do you think that Rassendyll wanted to tell Princess Flavia that he is not the real King?
 - He loved Flavia and he was sad that he was tricking her.
17. Why do you think that Sapt stopped Rassendyll telling Princess Flavia who he really was?
 - He feared that other people might know that Rassendyll wasn't the real King and all their plan failed.
18. Rassendyll was about to tell Flavia the truth. Do you think it was the right decision?
 - No. He had to wait until he rescued the King.
19. Rassendyll could arrange for killing the Duke and the real King. Say why.
 - Everyone in Ruritania thought he was the real King even the Princess. No one would oppose a king's order.
20. Why do you think Michael invited Flavia to visit him in Zenda?
 - To convince her to marry him.
21. Why do you think Antoinette wanted to warn Flavia from Michael?
 - She wanted to stop Michael from marrying Flavia.

22. Why do you think Antoinette called Rassendyll 'the leader' in her letter to Flavia?

- She wanted Flavia to suspect Rassendyll and suspect all what happened around her.

23. Why do you think the Marshal was chosen to look after Flavia while the King was away?

- Rassendyll felt that he is loyal to Ruritania not Michael and he was the only one who could face Michael as he was the leader of the army.

24. Who do you think would be the suitable ruler of Ruritania if it became sure the King was dead?

- Sapt. He was wise and he knew what was happening in the country.



Chapter 6

I) The setting of the chapter:

1. Place: Ruritania (Flavia's house \ Tarlenheim \ the inn)
2. Time: Nineteenth century \ 1890s

II) The characters:

1. Rudolf Rassendyll: بدأ بجمع معلومات عن كيفية اقتحام القلعة
2. Sapt: رأي استحالة انقاذ الملك بسبب خطة مايكل المحكمة
3. Fritz: ذهب مع رودلف الي الفندق للبحث عن يوهان
4. Flavia: حذرت رودلف من خطورة السعي خلف مايكل
5. Strakencz: اخبره رودلف عن نوايا مايكل وعن ضرورة حماية الاميرة
6. Rupert Hentzau: شخص ماهر جدا ، حاول رشوة رودلف ثم حاول قتله
7. The daughter of the hotel's owner: ساعدتهم في العثور علي يوهان
8. Bernenstein: احد جنود رودلف والذي اطلق رجال مايكل النار عليه في الغابة
9. Johann: اخبرهم بمعلومات هامة عن القلعة ، كيفية دخولها ، خطة مايكل للتخلص من الملك

Chapter in points:

A) Preparations to rescue the King:

1. Rassendyll thought it was time to make a move against Duke Michael:
 - He asked Marshal Strakencz to protect Princess Flavia from the Duke.
 - The Duke's mother wasn't royal. He can legally become king only if he married the Princess.
 - Rassendyll wrote down what he said. He told Strakencz that his finger still hurt so the writing was different from his usual.
 - Strakencz was worried that people might not believe that it was a real order from the King.
2. Rassendyll told Sapt and Fritz to get ready to go to Zenda and went to tell Flavia that he was leaving Strelsau to go hunting:
 - She told him that he would prefer to hunt animals than do his duties in the capital.
 - Rassendyll said he would hunt a very big animal as he would hunt Michael.
 - Rassendyll told her that if he didn't come back, she must become Queen.
 - She agreed to be the Queen if it was right for Ruritania.

3. Rassendyll, Sapt and Fritz went to Tarlenheim House in Zenda:
 - Tarlenheim was a large, modern country house which belonged to a relative of Fritz.
 - It was about eight kilometres from Zenda, on the opposite side of the town.
 - It was on top of a hill inside a leafy wood so it was well protected.
4. Rassendyll took a large party of servants and ten strong men that he trusted.
5. They told the men that Michael tried to kill the King and a good friend of the King's was held prisoner in the castle so their job was to set him free.
6. Because they were brave and loyal, they didn't ask any more questions.

B) The first visit:

1. Duke Michael heard about their arrival, and sent three of his famous Six Men to visit them.
2. Rupert Hentzau was the youngest and strongest of the three:
 - He told them that the Duke was sorry that they could not stay in his mansion.
 - Michael and many of his servants had a dangerous illness, so it was best if they stayed away.
 - Rassendyll thought that Rupert's speech was formal and polite, but he didn't believe it.
 - When they had gone, Sapt said that Rupert was the worst criminal of them all.

C) The inn:

1. That evening, Rassendyll set off for Zenda with Fritz:
 - He felt safe because he was covering his face and there were many people on the roads.
 - He kept the coat over his face, entered the inn and asked to have a meal in a quiet room at the back lest anyone should recognise him.
 - Rassendyll uncovered his face to the owner's daughter who knew that he was the King as she remembered when he stayed with them.
 - The girl apologised that she and her mother might say some bad things about the King when Rassendyll stayed with them before.
 - Rassendyll wanted the girl to help them to find Johann.
 - Rassendyll asked the girl to tell Johann to meet her tomorrow night at ten o'clock, then bring him to their house, Tarlenheim.
 - Rassendyll promised the girl that he wouldn't hurt Johann if he did as they asked.

2. As soon as they returned to Tarlenheim, Sapt ran out of the house happy that they were safe.
3. Sapt was worried about them as one of their men, Bernenstein, went out alone in the woods. He saw three men in the trees and one shot him. He was upstairs in bed with a bullet in his arm.
4. The next day, Rupert Hentzau visited their house alone with the second offer:
 - He called Rudolf with his real name, Rassendyll, not the King.
 - Rassendyll told Rupert that he couldn't call him that in public as people would know that they kidnapped the real King.
 - Rupert told Rassendyll a message from the Duke:
 - The Duke offered Rassendyll a safe journey to the border and a million gold pieces.
 - Rassendyll asked Rupert to tell the Duke that he refused his generous offer.
 - Before leaving, Rupert asked Rassendyll to shake hands but he suddenly stabbed Rassendyll in the shoulder with his knife then Rupert rode off fast before they could do anything.
5. Rassendyll was angry at letting himself fall in such a trick but it was not a bad injury.

D) Information from inside the castle:

1. When Rassendyll woke up, Fritz told him that his plan had worked:
 - The girl brought Johann to the house and he was downstairs.
 - Fritz said it was strange that Johann was happy to be here.
 - Rassendyll thought Johann would be very useful and with the right encouragement, he would make the perfect spy for them.
2. The guards brought Johann with his hands tied behind his back:
 - They understood that Johann was a weak man but not a wicked one.
 - Johann knew if Michael's plan succeeded, he would be in trouble because he knew too much.
 - He said he worked for Michael because he was afraid of him not because he liked him.
3. Johann told them about the place of the King:
 - There were two small rooms inside the castle.
 - The rooms were cut into the rock below the ground.
 - One room had no windows, so it was lit by candles.
 - Behind it was a second room with a small window, where the King was kept in chains.
 - From the window, they built a large stone pipe which led down to the castle moat.

4. Johann said if anyone searched the castle, he would find nothing: just an empty room:
 - If a small group attacked the castle:
 - If the first room was in danger, Detchard would go to the other room to kill the King.
 - They would put the body down the pipe and the weight of the chains would keep the body under water.
 - Detchard and the other men would escape from the pipe and swim across the moat.
 - The Duke's horses would take them to safety.
 - If the castle was attacked by many soldiers:
 - Detchard would kill the King and put his body in the pipe.
 - One of the men would take the King's place.
 - When Michael arrived, he would say that he was keeping one of the Six Men as prisoner because he was rude to Antoinette de Mauban.
5. Sapt was angry because if they attacked the castle secretly or openly with a great army, the King would still be dead before they could save him.
6. Johann told them that his brother Max helped to put up the pipe to the prison window.
7. Johann said it's not easy to sleep at the castle of Zenda because no one felt safe and all people were criminals except the King.
8. After thanking him, Rassendyll told Johann some orders:
 - If anyone asked him if there was a prisoner in the castle, he could say there was.
 - But if anyone asked him who the prisoner was, he shouldn't answer.
9. Rassendyll said there were two ways in which the King could come out of Zenda alive:
 - One was if they had a miracle.
 - The other was if one of the Duke's men betrayed him.

Critical thinking questions:

1. How far do you think Rassendyll trusted Marshal Strakencz?
 - He had to trust him as he was the only one who had the power to face Michael.
2. How do you think the Marshal could keep the future of Ruritania safe?
 - He would protect Favia and help her to be the queen if the King was killed.
3. The Duke's mother wasn't royal. How do you think this might have affected his position?
 - He had no right to claim the throne. He couldn't be a legal king unless he married a legal queen like the Princess.

4. Do you think the Duke was keen to marry Princess Flavia? Why?
 - Yes. It was his only way to be a legal king.
5. Why do you think the pretend King (Rassendyll) was keen on writing down his agreement with the Marshal?
 - So people knew that what the Marshal would do was a real order from the King.
6. Why do you think the pretend King (Rassendyll) told the Marshal that his finger still hurt?
 - As his handwriting was different from the King's.
7. Why do you think it was important for the Rassendyll to see Princess Flavia before leaving to Zenda?
 - She must know that Michael was dangerous for her and not to trust him.
8. The Princess said, "So you'd prefer to hunt animals than do your duties in the capital?" What do these words show about the Princess?
 - She was a serious person who liked people to had responsibilities.
9. Why do you think the Rassendyll told the Princess about the real reason for going to Zenda?
 - She must know the truth to face Micheal if anything went wrong.
10. Why do you think the Rassendyll asked the Princess to be the Queen if he didn't come back from Zenda?
 - To prevent Michael from controlling Ruritania.
11. Why do you think the Princess agreed to be the Queen if the King didn't return from Zenda?
 - She was patriotic and loyal to her country.
12. Why do you think Rassendyll needed ten brave and loyal men in his trip to Zenda?
 - To face Michael's men and to rescue the King.
13. Why do you think the Duke couldn't host the King (Rassendyll) at his mansion?
 - He knew that Rassendyll came to face him.
14. Do you think Michael really had a serious illness? So why Rupert really told Rassendyll that?
 - No. It was an excuse as Michael wanted to kill Rassendyll.
15. Why do you think Rupert's speech with Rassendyll in the country house was formal and polite?
 - He wanted to trick him.
16. Why do you think Rassendyll and his group chose the Tarlenheim house to stay in?
 - It was on top of a hill surrounded by trees so it was well-protected.
17. Why do you think Rassendyll went to the inn in Zenda as soon as he arrived?
 - He wanted to get information to rescue the King before Michael did anything.
18. Why do you think Rassendyll's journey with Fritz to the inn was dangerous?
 - Michael's men were around them and could shoot them.
19. The innkeeper's daughter realized Rassendyll as the King. Why do you think so?
 - Maybe she couldn't believe that there was someone who looked exactly liked the King.
20. Why do you think the girl in the inn apologized to the pretended King (Rassendyll)?
 - Because she and her mother said bad things about the King when Rassendyll visited them for the first time.
21. Do you think that the innkeeper's daughter was right to apologize to Rassendyll (the pretend King) although she wasn't mistaken? Why?
 - Yes. He was the King and she must be polite to him.

22. Why do you think Rassendyll wanted to meet Johann?
 - To know from him information about the King and how to enter the castle.
23. Although the Duke's offer was generous, Rassendyll refused it. Why do you think so?
 - He knew it was a trick and Rassendyll was an honourable man who wanted to rescue the King.
24. Sapt said that Rupert was the worst criminal of Michael's men. How do you think this came true?
 - He was the only one who dared to stab the King (Rassendyll) in front of all his men.
25. Why do you think Johann was afraid of Michael?
 - He knew much information about Michael's illegal deeds so if Micheal succeeded he might get rid of him.
26. How far do you think Johann could be useful for Rassendyll?
 - He could be a spy and helped him to enter the castle.
27. Why do you think it would be impossible to find the King in the castle?
 - Because of Michael's plan as either they attacked the castle secretly or openly the King would be dead and his body would be lying in the moat.
28. Why do you think a pipe was fixed on the window of the King's room?
 - To throw the King from it and to escape from it and no one knew what was happening.
29. Why do you think that Rassendyll's pulse quickened at the thought of being king forever?
 - He was sure that without facing Michael he was not safe and Michael would try to kill him.
30. Do you think that Rassendyll could have been king forever? Why?
 - No. It was not his right.
31. Why do you think Rassendyll asked Johann not to tell anyone who the prisoner was?
 - Not to reveal the secret that the real King was the prisoner of Zenda.
32. What do you think Rassendyll might have done if Johann had refused to work as a spy?
 - He might ask one of the Six Men to help him.



Chapter 7

I) The setting of the chapter:

1. Place: Ruritania (Tarlenheim \ the castle \ the forest)
2. Time: Nineteenth century \ 1890s

II) The characters:

1. Rudolf Rassendyll: ذهب الي القلعة مرتين لإنقاذ الملك
2. Sapt: اشترك مع رودلف في انقاذ الملك
3. Fritz: اشترك مع رودلف في انقاذ الملك
4. Strakencz: اصطحب الاميرة لرؤية رودلف بعد شائعة ان الملك اصيب
5. Flavia: اتت لرؤية رودلف بعد اصابته ، واعلن رودلف للناس ان زواجهم عن قريب
6. The King: مريض جدا داخل القلعة حتي انه طلب من احد رجال مايكل ان يقتله
7. Detchard: مسنول عن الملك واخبر الملك انه لم يحن الوقت بعد لقتله
8. Lauengram: احد رجال مايكل ، قتل في الغابة في اول هجوم علي القلعة
9. Krafstein: : احد رجال مايكل ، قتل في الغابة في اول هجوم علي القلعة
10. Rupert Hentzau: هرب قبل ان يقتل، حاول رودلف اقتاعه بالعمل معه ، ولكنه فاجأه باقتراح قتل الملك ومايكل
11. Max Holf: اخو يوهان ، قتله رودلف مضطرا في الخندق الماني حول القلعة
12. Chief of Police: اخبر رودلف عن اختفاء راسينديل
13. Antoinette de Mauban: بعثت رساله لرودلف من داخل القلعة ، طلبت من رودلف ان ينقذها من مايكل
14. Johann: عمل جيدا كجاسوس ، واخبر رودلف معلومات هامة جدا عن كيفية اقتحام القلعة
15. The Duke: وضع خطة محكمة لمنع انقاذ الملك ، غضب من مساعدة انطوانيت لرودلف وكذلك من اعلان خبر زواج الملك
16. The doctor: عالج الملك داخل القلعة ، وحاول اقناع مايكل بأن يطلق سراح الملك

Chapter in points

A) Important news:

1. Three pieces of news arrived at the Tarlenheim country house:
 - People of Strelsau heard the King was badly injured while he was hunting in the woods.
 - The Duke also thought he was badly injured but he knew well how he got his injury.
 - Marshal Strakencz said that Princess Flavia ordered him to take her to see the King.
2. Johann said the King was looking weak and ill, and they realised that they could not wait any longer or he would die.
3. Rassendyll considered the situation is the strangest thing in the history of any country:
 - A King's brother and a pretend King are near a quiet country town during a time of peace.
 - They acted out a war for the life of a sick King, with just a few people knowing about it.

B) The first attack on the castle:

1. Rassendyll, Sapt, Fritz and seven men went to the castle to get information to save the King.
2. They had weapons and rode their horses into a wet, windy night.
3. Near the castle, they asked the seven men to wait with the horses while they continued on foot up the hill to the moat around the castle.
4. Sapt tied a rope to a tree and Rassendyll took off his boots to climb down into the water.
5. Rassendyll swam to the giant pipe that led from the King's window to the moat, and was about to go nearer when he heard a noise.
6. He saw a boat next to the pipe:
 - There was a guard carrying a large gun in the boat.
 - Rassendyll went to the boat and saw that the guard was Max Holf.
 - Max was breathing slowly and deeply as he was asleep.
 - Rassendyll swam slowly to Max and stabbed him to death, though he hated to do it:
 - This is a war for the King's life and Max is working for the enemy.
 - He wanted to examine the pipe without troubles.
7. Rassendyll realised that the bottom of the pipe was not fastened to the wall and he could see light coming from its far end.
8. Although the pipe was very heavy, he pushed it a little and heard voices:
 - The King asked Detchard why Michael didn't kill him and Detchard replied that it was not decided yet.
 - Rassendyll heard a door being locked and the King was crying quietly.
9. Rassendyll climbed in the boat and rowed back to the rope, tied it round Max's body and asked Sapt to pull it up.
10. Sapt whistled for the seven men to come and get them with the horses:
 - As the men got nearer, Rassendyll and Sapt heard several shots and loud cries.
 - There was a fight in the woods: three of the seven men were killed and two of the Duke's men were killed, Lauengram and Krafstein.
 - Rupert Hentzau escaped as he waved a sword at Rassendyll and cut his stick in half then disappeared into the night.

C) Rassendyll appears:

1. Rassendyll received a visit from the Chief of Police in Strelsau:
 - He told Rassendyll that the British Ambassador reported that an Englishman called Rassendyll disappeared near the town of Zenda.
 - They found his bags at a nearby train station, and a man called Mr Featherly from Paris believed he was travelling with Madame de Mauban.
 - Rassendyll told the policeman that she was a guest of Duke Michael.
 - Rassendyll told the policeman to return in two weeks and he would find out information.
 - Rassendyll wanted at least two weeks without any more difficult questions as his game had almost been discovered.
2. With the policeman in town, Rupert felt safe to ride out on his horse on the road of Zenda:
 - When Rassendyll saw him, he caught up with him and asked him about the Duke.
 - Rassendyll tried to persuade Rupert to work with him:
 - Rassendyll told Rupert that he was young and he shouldn't be involved with Michael.
 - He told him that if he set the King free, he could help him.
 - Rupert gave a very strange offer to Rassendyll:
 - He agreed to work with Rassendyll.
 - He told Rassendyll he would tell him when to attack the castle.
 - He put a condition that the King, Michael, Fritz and Sapt must die. Rassendyll would stay as the King, and he would have a reward.
 - Rupert was ready to work against Michael as he was not a good man and he made him angry so he was about to kill him last night.

D) Information from inside the castle:

1. A boy brought Rassendyll a message from Antoinette de Mauban (the second letter):
 - She wrote to Rassendyll that the Duke discovered that she helped him that night in the Summer House.
 - The Duke was keeping her a prisoner in his mansion because he couldn't trust her.
 - She asked Rassendyll to rescue her from the house of murderers.

2. Rassendyll sent the people in Strelsau a message saying that Flavia and he arranged a date for their wedding to keep them happy.
3. Johann told Rassendyll some news and they paid him well to act as their spy:
 - The Duke was furious to hear about the wedding.
 - The King became so ill that the Duke asked for a doctor to examine him.
 - The doctor advised the Duke to set the King free at once, but the Duke refused.
 - The Duke decided that the doctor would stay with the King until he was better or died.
 - The Duke didn't let the doctor leave as he would tell people that the prisoner was the King.
 - Antoinette helped to look after the King, who was guarded by two of the remaining Six Men.
 - Johann told them where all the people stayed at night in the castle and the mansion, and who had the keys to the doors.
 - Johann told Rassendyll that the new servants didn't know who the prisoner was.
 - Rassendyll offered Johann 50,000 pieces of gold:
 - To give a letter to Antoinette de Mauban.
 - To open the front door to the mansion at two o'clock in the morning.

E) Rassendyll's plan to rescue the King:

1. When Johann was gone, Rassendyll told Sapt and Fritz about his plan:
 - At two o'clock in the morning, Antoinette would cry out for help from her room.
 - The Duke would come to see what was happening.
 - At the same time Johann would open the door of the mansion.
 - Sapt would take some men and quickly enter the mansion to tie up the servants and try to take Michael.
 - There would only be two men left guarding the King, so Rassendyll would move quickly before they hurt him.
 - Tarlenheim was to be filled with lights and music so that people believed there was a ball.
 - Marshal Strakencz would guard the house and the Princess and if they had not returned, he would then march to the castle and ask to see the King at once.
 - If the King was not there, he would quickly take Princess Flavia back to the capital where she would become Queen.

2. Sapt took his men to the mansion and Rassendyll rode alone to the castle.
3. He left the horse and gun in some trees, tied a rope to a tree and climbed down into the water.
4. He swam to the pipe, saw that the lights were on in the Duke's and Antoinette's rooms.
5. He saw Rupert walk towards the castle onto the drawbridge with De Gautet.
6. After they got into the castle, Rupert returned alone, climbed down some hidden steps to the moat and swam across.
7. Then he climbed some steps opposite and disappeared back into the mansion.
8. Rassendyll watched all this and wondered what Rupert was planning to do.

Critical thinking questions:

1. Do you think the people of Ruritania were interested in the news of the King's injury?
 - Yes. Because they were worried about his injury.
2. Why do you think it was necessary to do something to save the King quickly?
 - He was getting sick and might die.
3. Why do you think Rassendyll and his group went to the castle the first time?
 - To gather information to save the King and to make sure that Johann's information was right.
4. Why do you think Rassendyll swam around the castle?
 - To find any way inside rather than the drawbridge.
5. Why do you think Max Holf was in a boat in the moat at night?
 - To guard the King's room from the outside.
6. Why do you think Rassendyll stabbed Max Holf to death although he hated to do it?
 - This is a war for the King's life and Max is working for the enemy. He wanted to examine the pipe without troubles.
7. How do you think Rassendyll benefited from killing Max Holf?
 - He could examine the pipe without troubles.
8. What do you think Rassendyll would do to Max's body?
 - He would bury it or hide it not to make Michael know that Rassendyll was in the castle.
9. When Rassendyll returned from the castle, he was sad, worried and angry. Discuss.
 - He was sad because three of his men were killed. He was worried about the health of the King. He was angry that Rupert escaped.
10. Why do you think the pretend King (Rassendyll) ordered the Police Chief to return in two weeks?
 - He feared that he might discover his reality that he wasn't the King.
11. Why do you think Rassendyll tried to persuade Rupert to work with them?
 - To help him free the King and Rupert was the only one who could betray Michael.
12. Do you think that Rupert would really work against Michael? Why / Why not?
 - Yes. He thought that Michael was not a good man and he was about to kill him as he made him angry.

13. When Rassendyll tried to persuade Rupert to work with them, Rupert suggested another plan. What do you think of that plan? Why?
 - It was very dangerous and mad so Rassendyll couldn't accept it as Rupert was and couldn't be trusted.
14. What do you think Rupert's reward would be?
 - He might want a position or to marry Antoinette.
15. Do you think that the people of Strelsau had the right to be angry with the King? Why?
 - Yes. He spent a lot of time hunting leaving his duties.
16. Why do you think the people of Strelsau greeted the news of the wedding with a great joy?
 - They wanted the King not Michael to marry Flavia.
17. Why do you think the Duke was furious after hearing about the wedding?
 - His plan to be a legal king after marrying Flavia was ruined.
18. Why do you think the doctor advised the Duke to set the King free at once?
 - The King was dying and needed special care.
19. How do you think the Duke refused to set the King free as the doctor advised him?
 - He feared that the King would arrest him after he recovered.
20. Why do you think Rassendyll would pay Johann for?
 - To work as a spy and get him information from inside the castle.
21. Why do you think there were new servants at the castle?
 - Not to know that the prisoner was the King.
22. What do you think Rassendyll chose Johann to help them to break into the mansion?
 - He was ready to work against Michael and he knew the castle and the mansion well.
23. Why do you think Antoinette would cry out for help during breaking into the mansion?
 - To attract Michael's attention so they could kill him when he came to see what was happening and to make the castle as empty as possible to be able to enter to save the King.
24. Why do you think the Tarlenheim house was to be filled with lights and music?
 - To make Michael think that they were having a party and they wouldn't attack the castle that night.



Chapter 8

I) The setting of the chapter:

1. Place: Ruritania (the castle \ the mansion \ the forest) , England
2. Time: Nineteenth century \ 1890s

II) The characters:

1. Rudolf Rassendyll: الأمير الذي يحبه وكذلك المرموق وكذلك بحبه الي الاميرة
2. Sapt: ساعد رودلف في اقتحام القلعة
3. Fritz: رافق رودلف في الغابة بعد اصابته
4. De Gautet: قتله رودلف خارج القلعة, واخذ منه مفاتيح سجن الملك
5. Bersonin: قتله رودلف داخل القلعة في اول غرفة
6. Detchard: حاول قتل الملك وقام فعلا بقتل الطبيب ولكن رودلف تخلص منه في النهاية في ثاني غرفة
7. Antoinette de Mauban: قامت بالصراخ بعدما هاجمها روبيرت
8. Rupert Hentzau: حاول معاقبة انطوانيت لأنها تساعد رودلف, فر في النهاية بعدما قتل مايكل
9. The King: اخيرا تم إنقاذه
10. The Duke: قتله روبيرت
11. The doctor: حاول مساعدة الملك لكنه قتل
12. Johann: اخبرهم عن معلومات هامة ، هاجمه روبيرت وجرحه
13. A young boy: اخذ منه روبيرت الجواد ، وهو من اشار لوجود الملك بالغابة
14. Strakencz: قام باصطحاب الاميرة لرؤية الملك بالقلعة
15. Flavia: اتت لرؤية الملك ، فوجئت بخداع رودلف لها ، ضحت بحبها لرودلف في سبيل روريتانيا
16. Rose: لازالت مصرة ان رودلف لن يفلح ابدا
17. Robert Rassendyll: اخو رودلف فوجئ بشبهه الشديد مع الملك
18. Sir Jacob Borrodaile: اصبح سفير انجلترا في روريتانيا

Chapter in points

A) A sudden change in the plan:

1. When Rupert disappeared into the mansion, Rassendyll climbed out and waited by the drawbridge gate next to the castle.
2. Detchard, Bersonin and De Gautet were left to protect the King in his prison.
3. About one o'clock in the morning, there was a loud noise from the mansion:
 - Antoinette de Mauban shouted loudly for help.
 - It was an hour too early, before Sapt and the others reached the front door to the mansion, and before Johann had time to open it.
 - Rassendyll heard Antoinette shouting again that Rupert Hentzau was attacking her.

4. Rassendyll heard Michael running to help Antoinette with his servants:

- Rupert told Michael that he should punish Antoinette as she was writing secret letters to Rassendyll.
- Michael said he would punish Rupert as Antoinette was his guest.
- A noisy sword fight began in the room and Rupert stabbed Michael then struck his sword at Johann accusing him that he was Rassendyll's spy.
- Rassendyll was worried that if Johann was hurt, he couldn't open the door for the men.

B) The King at last:

1. Rupert jumped out of the window down into the moat and he swam away.
2. De Gautet appeared in front of Rassendyll, so he struck him with his sword not his gun:
 - as he left his gun in the trees.
 - not to be heard by anyone.
3. De Gautet fell to the ground and Rassendyll found three keys of the King's room in his clothes.
4. Rassendyll entered a room and heard Detchard say that they mustn't kill the King.
5. The door opened suddenly and Bersonin appeared so Rassendyll struck him with his sword.
6. Detchard closed the door fast understanding there was danger.
7. Rassendyll unlocked the door nervously but was relieved to see the doctor was holding Detchard.
8. The King was weak from illness and chained in one corner looking in fear.
9. Detchard broke free and killed the doctor with his sword.
10. Detchard and Rassendyll had a sword fight:
 - Detchard was a much better swordsman than Rassendyll and knew all the tricks.
 - Detchard cut Rassendyll on the arm but the King tried to help his cousin pushing the legs of a chair into Detchard's body.
 - Detchard found it hard to stand up and he fell over the doctor's body while trying to strike the King so it was easy for Rassendyll to kill him.
 - Rassendyll was very happy when the King moaned, as he knew he was alive.

C) Michael was dead:

- 1. Outside the castle, Antoinette de Mauban told Rupert that he killed the Duke:**
 - Rupert told the servants that he was now their leader.
 - He ordered them to put down their weapons and do as he said but they refused.
 - Rupert jumped in the water before Antoinette de Mauban shot him with her gun.
 - Rassendyll ran after Rupert but he couldn't swim fast with his wounded arm.
 - Rassendyll saw Rupert waving, as if it were a game, as if he knew he would never catch him.
 - Rupert found a boy riding to market, quickly pulled him from the horse and took his place.
 - Rupert tried to get the boy to be quiet by giving him some money, and this gave Rassendyll time to catch up with him.
- 2. Rassendyll told Rupert that he was the last of the Six Men and the King was hurt, but alive:**
 - Rassendyll attacked Rupert so he pushed Rassendyll away with his sword.
 - Rassendyll cut Rupert's cheek who held his sword high and was about to kill Rassendyll.
 - When Fritz arrived carrying a gun, Rupert understood that he could not fight them both, so he turned the horse and rode away as fast as he could.
 - Fritz didn't follow Rupert as Rassendyll was badly injured.
 - The young boy who Rupert attacked thought that Rassendyll was the King.

D) The truth:

- 1. Rassendyll returned to the castle. Fritz and Antoinette told him what happened:**
 - A few months earlier, the Duke met Antoinette in Paris and asked her to visit Ruritania to see the coronation.
 - She respected the Duke and was pleased to be his guest.
 - Some of the Duke's servants told her servants about the Duke's ambitions to be King.
 - She did not like his evil plans and decided to warn Rassendyll of everything.
 - When the Duke found out that she warned Rassendyll in Strelsau, he tricked Antoinette by inviting her and her servants to his castle.
 - Once she was there, he prevented her from leaving to stop her telling anyone about his plan.
 - Antoinette was still able to send letters by the help of their spy Johann.
 - Rupert discovered that Antoinette was helping Rassendyll, so he wanted to punish her.

- By chance he chose the very night that they were attacking the castle.
- Rupert killed the Duke believing that without the Duke, Rassendyll would stay as the King and reward him for his evil work.
- He did not understand that Rassendyll was pretending to be the King for the good of Ruritania not for himself.
- Johann was helping the Duke so he could not open the front door at two o'clock as planned.
- Sapt found the King lying in his prison. He was carried with his face covered to the mansion to hide that the real King was the prisoner of Zenda.

E) Trying to hide their identities:

1. Sapt had to ask Johann and Antoinette de Mauban to guard the secret about the real King.
2. The men and the servants thought that the King had been injured while rescuing the prisoner, who had gone after Rupert Hentzau.
3. News was sent to Tarlenheim to tell the Princess that the King was hurt but alive.
4. The people of Strelsau accepted Michael's death:
 - They heard that the brave King fought with his brother because he kept a prisoner in Zenda who was a friend of the King.
 - The Duke tried to kill the King, who was injured, but the evil Duke died.

F) Rassendyll's reality was revealed:

1. Flavia did not wait at Tarlenheim and asked Strakencz to take her to Zenda to see the King.
2. When Fritz was leading Rassendyll back from the forest, he saw Flavia's coach approaching the castle so he hid behind a tree.
3. The young boy was following them and called out that the King was behind this tree:
 - The Marshal leaned out of the coach window and told the boy that what he was saying was nonsense as the King was injured in the castle.
 - Flavia got off then walked with Sapt across the grass to check if the King was there.
 - Flavia saw Rassendyll and thought he was the King but he asked her to forgive him as he tricked her and he wasn't the real King.
 - The Princess looked surprised, then frightened as she did not know what to say.

4. To hide that Rassendyll was pretending to be the King:

- Sapt took Flavia back to the castle to tell her the truth.
- Fritz and Rassendyll waited in the forest while Flavia stayed in the mansion with the King.
- At night, Fritz led Rassendyll to the castle where he stayed, unseen, in the rooms that had been the King's prison.

5. Johann brought Rassendyll food and told him the news:

- The King was getting better and had seen the Princess with Sapt, and Marshal Strakencz had returned to Strelsau.
- Everyone was talking about the strange prisoner of Zenda and who he could be.
- Some said he was an English friend of the King's who heard about the Duke's plans, so the Duke locked him up to stop him from speaking to the King.

6. Fritz took Rassendyll to see the King:

- The King was lying in bed with a doctor next to him. He looked weak and tired.
- When he saw that Rassendyll was injured, he told him that they were always the same.
- The King was grateful and thanked Rassendyll that he saved him and wanted to tell everyone about the brave things that Rassendyll had done.
- Sapt told the King that this wasn't possible as Rassendyll's work in Ruritania was complete.
- The King thought people wouldn't be surprised to see him looking different as they know that the King was injured.
- The King told Rassendyll that he taught him what a true King should be:
 - How to run a country.
 - How to do your duties and care for your people.
 - How to choose your assistants and not trust everyone.
- Rassendyll thought that he would help the King again as:
 - He was worried that Rupert was still free.
 - He was angry as he couldn't forget that Rupert had almost beaten him.

7. The Princess came and told Rassendyll that he tricked her so he apologised.

8. She told Rassendyll that she should thank him for all he had done for Ruritania.

9. Rassendyll said that he also had great benefits as he learned all about duties and responsibilities and it was a lesson he would never forget.

G) The end:

1. A few hours later, Sapt and Fritz bowed down to Rassendyll as he got on a train at a small station near the border of Ruritania.
2. When Rassendyll returned to England, he had some explaining to do:
 - His brother Robert and his wife Rose told him that everyone had been looking for him.
 - Rose was very disappointed when he told her he had not written a book.
 - Rose told Rudolf that the Ambassador would send him to Ruritania as Sir Jacob Borrodaile would be the British Ambassador in Strelsau.
 - Rudolf said it wouldn't be good to work in Ruritania as he looked exactly like the King.
 - He showed Robert and Rose a photograph in a newspaper which showed the King's coronation in which there was Rudolf, with Sapt, Fritz, Michael and the Princess.
 - Robert and Rose looked at the photograph in amazement but Rose thought that this was just an excuse and if Rudolf didn't go, he'd never be anyone important.
 - Rudolf told himself that he did not need to go. He had been something far more important than an ambassador: he had been a King.
 - Rudolf remembered and understood what Rose had said months ago:
 - A person with a position in society had responsibilities.
 - But even without a position in society, we all had a duty to help other people when we could, and we all become better people for doing so.

Critical thinking questions:

1. Why do you think Rassendyll wished he had the keys to the King's room?
 - To enter the castle and save the King.
2. Why do you think Rupert wanted to punish Antoinette?
 - Because she didn't accept his plan to kill Michael and marry him and she was helping Rassendyll.
3. Why do you think Rassendyll was worried about Johann when there was a fight in the mansion?
 - If Johann was killed, he couldn't open the door for Sapt and his men.
4. Why do you think De Gautet came out of the castle?
 - To check if there was danger and what was happening in the mansion.
5. Why does Rassendyll kill De Gautet with a sword and not with a gun?
 - He left his gun at the tree and he didn't want anyone to know that he was there in the castle.
6. Detchard said, "We mustn't kill him yet or there'll be trouble." What do you think the trouble would be if they killed the King then?
 - Michael might be angry if they killed the King for no reason.

7. Why do you think Detchard closed the door of the King's room fast?
 - He saw Rassendyll killing Bersonin and knew there was danger.
8. Why do you think Rassendyll expected to see the King had already been killed?
 - He saw Detchard closing the door and remembered their plan the he would kill the King and put his body in the pipe.
9. Why do you think Rassendyll was happy when he heard the King moaning?
 - He knew that he was still alive.
10. Why do you think Rupert returned again to the mansion?
 - He wanted to complete his fight with Michael.
11. Why do you think the servant didn't obey Michael's orders and didn't put down their weapons?
 - They were angry as he killed Michael.
12. How do you think Rupert jumped into the moat once again instead of fighting with Antoinette?
 - She was pointing a gun at him.
13. Why do you think Rassendyll went behind Rupert instead of staying with the King to help him?
 - The King was safe and he wanted to take revenge on Rupert for stabbing him.
14. Do you think Rupert knew that the castle was being attacked by Rassendyll then?
 - No. He thought Rassendyll accepted his plan.
15. Why do you think Rupert was surprised when he saw the rope which Rassendyll used to get down the moat?
 - He didn't know that someone tried to get into the moat.
16. Why do you think Rassendyll could not swim fast to catch up with Rupert?
 - He was injured when Detchard struck him with his sword.
17. Why do you think Rupert needed to get a horse while escaping into the forest?
 - To escape before Rassendyll caught him.
18. Why do you think Rupert asked Rassendyll about what he had done in the castle?
 - He expected that he killed the King as he offered him.
19. Why do you think Rassendyll didn't follow Rupert's plan?
 - Rassendyll was an honourable man who couldn't accept to betray his principles.
20. Why do you think Rupert ride away instead of fighting Rassendyll when Fritz arrived?
 - He knew he couldn't fight Rassendyll and Fritz also Fritz was carrying a gun.
21. Why do you think Johann couldn't open the front door for Sapt and his men?
 - He was helping Michael after Michael was injured.
22. Why do you think they covered the King's face while carrying him to the mansion?
 - To hide that he King was the prisoner of Zenda.
23. Why do you think Rassendyll wanted to hide on seeing Flavia's coach on the way to the castle?
 - He didn't want Flavia to know that he tricked her.
24. Why does Sapt tell the Princess to come alone to see the King behind the tree?
 - He wanted to hide that Rassendyll wasn't the real King.
25. Why do you think the Princess looked surprised, then frightened?
 - She was shocked to know that Rassendyll was tricking her all that time.

26. Why do you think Sapt objected to the idea of Rassendyll's going to Strelsau with the King?

- He didn't want the people to know that the person who they saw in the last few months and respected and liked him was not the real King.

27. How did Rassendyll give the King a useful lesson?

- He taught him how to run a country, how to do his duties and care for his people and how to choose his assistants and not trust everyone.

28. Why do you think the Princess wasn't angry with Rassendyll despite tricking her?

- She knew that Rassendyll did all this to protect Ruritania, the King and her. Also she knew that Rassendyll loved her.

29. What do you think made Rassendyll's heart beat louder in his chest?

- He was worried about the King as Rupert was still free. And he was angry as he couldn't forget that Rupert had almost beaten him.

30. Why do you think Rassendyll refused to work for Sir Jacob in Ruritania?

- As Sir Jacob would work in Ruritania. He couldn't go as he looked like the King and he would cause problems to the King. He was escaping from his relation with Flavia.



Questions



Chapter 1

1) Answer the following questions:

- What is the setting of the story?
- Who is the author of the novel?
- This story is set in Europe in the 1890s. How did people travel then?
- How did they communicate between cities quickly?
- What kinds of things did upper-class people do?
- Where did they get their money from if they didn't work?
- Why doesn't Rudolf Rassendyll work?
- What kind of work does Rose suggest Rudolf should do?
- Why has the Rassendyll family been interested in the Elphberg family?
- Where does Rassendyll decide to travel to? What does he tell his family about his plans?
- Why did Rassendyll decide to spend a day in Paris?
- What did Rassendyll read in the newspapers made him change his plans?
- What does the owner of the inn think of Michael, Duke of Strelsau?
- Why does Rassendyll decide to walk through the forest the next day?
- Who does Rassendyll meet in the forest? Why are they surprised to see him?
- Why does Rassendyll look like the King of Ruritania?
- Why don't many people know what the King looks like?
- What things was Rudolf Rassendyll good at?
- Why did Rudolf Rassendyll agree to work for Sir Jacob Borrodaile?
- George Featherly thinks that Duke Michael won't enjoy the coronation of his half-brother, Rudolf. What reason does he give for this?
- What did Rassendyll know about Antoinette de Mauban?
- Why did the guards at the border stare at Rudolf Rassendyll?
- Describe the castle of Zenda.
- What was Rassendyll dreaming of while sleeping in the forest?
- What did Rassendyll read that helped his decision to travel to Ruritania?

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Who is Rose Rassendyll?

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| a) She is Rassendyll's sister. | b) She is Rassendyll's countess. |
| c) She is Rassendyll's sister-in-law. | d) She is Rassendyll's brother-in-law. |

2. Who is Rudolf Rassendyll?

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| a) He is Lord Burlesdon. | b) He is a wealthy English gentleman. |
| c) He is an English ambassador. | d) He is Rose's husband. |

3. What did Rose Rassendyll blame Rudolf for?

- | | |
|----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| a) She blamed him for being active. | b) She blamed him for not doing anything useful. |
| c) She blamed him for working in an embassy. | d) She blamed him for being a strong swordsman. |

4. What was Rassendyll doing when Rose came with her offer?

- | | |
|------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| a) He was preparing to go to Ruritania. | b) He was training for the race. |
| c) He was having breakfast in the dining room. | d) He was reading the Times. |

5. Robert Rassendyll believed that was the best way to get into politics.

- | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------|
| a) taking photographs | b) working for the ambassador |
| c) writing books | d) travelling to Ruritania |

6. Rudolf Rassendyll studies at a university.

- | | |
|-----------|---------------|
| a) French | b) British |
| c) German | d) Ruritanian |

7. Rudolf Rassendyll didn't like to work because

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| a) His family are in bad need of money. | b) He enjoys a humble position in society. |
| c) He dislikes the English ambassador. | d) He has nearly enough money to do anything. |

8. Who is Robert Rassendyll?

a) He is the new King of Ruritania.	b) He is Lord Burlesdon.
c) He is Countess Amelia's husband.	d) He is an English ambassador.

9. Rose was annoyed when Rudolf said that his family didn't need to do things because

a) She wanted him to work in an embassy.	b) Her family was less important than the Rassendylls.
c) He was a member of the Ruritanian royal family.	d) Her family was more important than the Rassendylls.

10. How did Rassendyll show that he had not been lazy all his life?

a) He spoke Arabic, Latin, Italian and Spanish.	b) He was very good at diving and riding bikes.
c) He had an interest in Ruritania.	d) He had studied hard and learned a lot when he was at a German school and university.

11. How was Rudolf Rassendyll different from his brother?

a) Robert only saw opportunities in his position.	b) Rassendyll realized that his position in society had responsibilities.
c) Rudolf had red hair, but Robert didn't.	d) Rassendyll was active and shouldered responsibilities.

12. What kind of work did Rose suggest Rudolf should do?

a) He should be a member of a royal family.	b) He should be an ambassador in six months' time.
c) He should work for Sir Jacob Borrodaile.	d) He should be a reporter in The Times newspaper.

13. What is the reason that Rudolf Rassendyll gave for being lazy?

a) Because he came from an important family.	b) Because he didn't have a good job.
c) Because he was from a royal family.	d) Because he never wanted to travel.

14. Who was Sir Jacob Borrodaile?

a) He was a descendant of Rose.	b) He was a strong swordsman.
c) He was to be the new King of Ruritania.	d) He was to be an ambassador.

15. What did Rose persuade Rassendyll to do?

a) To have an interest in Ruritania.	b) To be good with a gun and a strong swordsman.
c) To become King of Ruritania.	d) To work for Sir Jacob Borrodaile.

16. Rassendyll agreed to work for Sir Jacob Borrodaile because

a) He thought the job sounded quite interesting.	b) Rose forced him to work for him.
c) He would get a good salary.	d) Rose wouldn't think he was lazy.

17. When would Sir Jacob be an ambassador?

a) in 6 months' time.	b) in 6 weeks' time.
c) in 6 years' time.	d) in 6 days' time.

18. Why has the Rassendyll family been interested in the Elphberg family?

a) Because Amelia Rassendyll married a member of the Ruritanian royal family.	b) Because Amelia Rassendyll was married to King Rudolf the Fifth.
c) There were paintings of Amelia Rassendyll and her descendants on Robert's walls.	d) The Rassendylls had red hair like the Elphbergs.

19. Whose paintings did Lord Burlesdon have on his walls?

a) Countess Amelia and her ancestors.	b) Countess Amelia and Rose.
c) Countess Amelia and her descendants.	d) Countess Amelia and her husband

20. What did many of Countess Amelia's descendants have in common?

a) The same black hair and straight nose.	b) The same red hair and straight nose.
c) The same red hair and round nose.	d) The same red face and straight head.

21. Which of these was not a reason that Rudolf Rassendyll decided to visit Ruritania?

a) He has six months before his job starts.	b) Rudolf the Fifth is to become King of Ruritania there shortly.
c) His family have relatives there.	d) He wants to write a book about social problems.

22. What special event is going to take place in Ruritania?

a) There will be a war.	b) There will be a coronation of a new king.
c) There will be a new Duke of Strelsau.	d) There will be a wedding of the new king.

23. Where did Rassendyll decide to travel to?

a) Ruritania.	b) Germany.
c) France.	d) The Alps.

24. What did he tell his family about his plans?

a) He was going to meet George Featherly.	b) He was going to attend the coronation.
c) He was going walking in the Alps.	d) He was going to write a book about physics.

25. Rudolf didn't tell his family about his plans to travel to Ruritania because

a) He never liked to tell them where he was going.	b) His family hated Ruritania.
c) Rose persuaded him to take the job.	d) Rose would know he was still serious.

26. What was Uncle William's advice for those passing through Paris?

a) It was to sit with Antoinette de Mauban.	b) It was to have dinner with his friends.
c) It was to stay in the Continental.	d) It was to spend a day in the city.

27. Who did Rudolf Rassendyll call on in Paris?

a) He called on Antoinette de Mauban.	b) He called on the Duke of Strelsau.
c) He called on Uncle William.	d) He called on two old friends.

28. Where does George Featherly work?

a) An embassy in England.	b) An embassy in Paris.
c) A news agency in Paris.	d) A restaurant in Paris.

29. Antoinette de Mauban was known for

a) Her beauty and selfishness.	b) Her wealth and ambition.
c) Her honesty and tolerance.	d) Her patience and peace of mind.

30. Why did Antoinette de Mauban go to Paris?

a) To meet George Featherly.	b) To get money from the Duke of Strelsau.
c) She was a guest of the Duke of Strelsau.	d) She was a relative of Rassendyll.

31. Who was Duke Michael Elphberg?

a) He was Rudolf Elphberg's half-brother.	b) He was Rudolf Elphberg's uncle.
c) He was the King of Ruritania.	d) He was a journalist in Paris.

32. George Featherly thought that Michael wouldn't enjoy the coronation of his half-brother because

a) Michael wanted to marry De Mauban.	b) Michael wished he were the king.
c) Michael prepared for the coronation.	d) His brother Rudolf was older than him.

33. Why Rassendyll didn't tell George that he was going to Ruritania?

a) He would have told Rose.	b) He would have told uncle William.
c) He would have told the Duke of Strelsau.	d) He would have told Bertram.

34. Who did Rudolf see on the train to Dresden?

a) The Duke.	b) Antoinette De Mauban.
c) George Featherly.	d) Bertram Bertrand.

35. Why did the guards at the Ruritanian border stare at Rassendyll?

a) He stayed in an inn in Zenda.	b) He was a relative of the King's.
c) He didn't have a passport.	d) He looked very much like Rudolf Elphberg.

36. What news did Rudolf read in the Ruritanian paper?

a) The King's coronation was delayed.	b) The King's coronation was to be in two weeks' time.
c) King Rudolf the Fifth would be a king after three weeks.	d) All the hotels were full with people who wanted to see the Duke's coronation.

37. What is the capital of Ruritania?

a) Dresden.	b) Zenda.
c) Strelsau.	d) Paris.

38. Rassendyll Rudolf decided to stop at Zenda because

- | | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| a) He knew that all the hotels in the capital were full of people. | b) He wanted to see the King Rudolf Elphberg. |
| c) He knew that the coronation would be boring. | d) He wanted to live in the castle of Zenda. |

39. How far was Zenda from the border?

- | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| a) 80 kilometres. | b) 10 kilometres. |
| c) 90 kilometres. | d) 70 kilometres. |

40. Why did the owner of the inn like Michael, the Duke of Strelsau?

- | | |
|----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| a) He would be the King and not his brother. | b) He wanted to be the king of Ruritania. |
| c) He cared about the people. | d) He had been abroad for most of his life. |

41. What did the owner of the inn think of the King?

- | | |
|---------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| a) He had been in Ruritania for most of his life. | b) Many people even know how he looks like |
| c) He cared about the people. | d) She thinks he is almost a stranger. |

42. Why was the King at the Duke's hunting lodge at Zenda?

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| a) He bought the hunting lodge from the Duke. | b) Duke Michael invited him to rest there. |
| c) He likes to be away from people. | d) He likes living in the forest. |

43. Why was Duke Michael at Strelsau?

- | | |
|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| a) To make preparations for the coronation. | b) To book Rassendyll a room in a hotel. |
| c) To be the King of Ruritania. | d) To invite his brother to stay in the hunting lodge. |

44. Why does Rudolf Elphberg have the right to become the King of Ruritania?

- | | |
|-------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| a) Because he is more popular than his brother. | b) Because he was abroad for most of his life. |
| c) Because he likes hunting and good food. | d) Because he is the older son. |

45. Who was Johann Holf?

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| a) A soldier who worked for the King. | b) A servant who worked for the King. |
| c) A servant who worked in the inn. | d) A servant who worked for the Duke. |

46. Why did Johann step back in surprise when he saw Rassendyll?

- | | |
|---------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| a) Rassendyll had seen the King before. | b) He looked very much like the King. |
| c) He didn't expect to see new guests in the inn. | d) He had red hair like all the Elphbergs. |

47. What did Johann invite Rassendyll to do?

- | | |
|-------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| a) To stay with him in the hunting lodge. | b) To stay with his sister and her husband. |
| c) To have dinner in the hunting lodge. | d) To stay with him in the inn. |

48. The coronation would be

- | | |
|---------------|------------------|
| a) on Friday. | b) on Wednesday. |
| c) on Sunday. | d) on Saturday. |

49. Why did Rassendyll decide to walk through the forest the next day?

- | | |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| a) He might go hunting. | b) He might see the King. |
| c) He might swim in the moat. | d) He might live in the mansion. |

50. Were the King and Duke Michael friends? Why?

- | | |
|------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| a) No, because both of them wanted the throne. | b) Yes, because they were of the same age. |
| c) Yes, because they were brothers. | d) No, because they don't have the same hair colour. |

51. Why did Rassendyll think the castle was well-defended?

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| a) There was a moat all around it. | b) It had a large modern mansion. |
| c) It had a drawbridge. | d) It's walls were very high. |

52. Why were Sapt and Fritz surprised to see Rassendyll?

- | | |
|-------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| a) Because he was sleeping in the forest. | b) Because he worked in the army. |
| c) Because he was a soldier like them. | d) Because he looked like the King. |

53. Who did Colonel Sapt work for?

- | | |
|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| a) He worked for the Duke of Strelsau. | b) He worked for Rassendyll. |
| c) He worked for the Queen of England. | d) He worked for the King of Ruritania. |

54. What does Fritz look like?

a) He was thin and of medium height.	b) He was fat and of a big nose.
c) He looked like a tough soldier.	d) He looked like a king.

55. What happened when Rassendyll and the King met for the first time?

a) Rassendyll stood back in fear.	b) Rassendyll gave a loud cry.
c) The king gave a loud cry.	d) They cried in pain.

56. In what way were Rudolf Rassendyll and the King alike?

a) They were not kind men.	b) They both liked fighting.
c) They both had an easy life.	d) They were both English.

57. Why does Fritz von Tarlenheim say that he understands Rudolf Rassendyll well?

a) They are both officers for a King or Queen.	b) They both were young.
c) They both look like the King.	d) They both want to meet the Duke.

58. Who do Fritz von Tarlenheim and Colonel Sapt work for?

a) Duke Michael.	b) The King.
c) Johann.	d) Antoinette de Mauban.

Chapter 2

1) Answer the following questions:

- What differences were there between the King and Rassendyll in appearance?
- Why did the King apologise for?
- Why don't Fritz and Sapt eat very much?
- What advice do they give the King? Does he listen to them?
- What happens at the end of the meal? What is the result the next day?
- Why does the Duke poison the King?
- Is Rassendyll also poisoned? Why isn't he as sick as the King?
- Why wouldn't the King be crowned if he wasn't crowned that day?
- How and when will they get the King to Strelsau?
- Who overhears their plan? What do they do with the person?
- What is the first thing they do when they reach the capital?
- Why aren't the people from the palace at the station in Strelsau to meet them?
- Why is Rassendyll afraid when he sees Antoinette de Mauban?
- The cakes that the King ate in the hunting lodge had a very bad effect on him. Explain.
- Why was it difficult to bring a doctor to help the King?
- Sapt and Fritz were lucky before the coronation. Discuss
- At first, Rudolf Rassendyll objected to replacing the King for three reasons. What were they?
- How could Sapt and Fritz persuade Rassendyll to replace the King?
- How did the people meet the King at the station?
- How were the streets like during the coronation?
- What things did Sapt tell Rudolf Rassendyll about the King on their way to the palace?
- Who did the poor people of Strelsau support: the King or Duke Michael? Why?
- To what extent did the King have a good opinion of his brother? How was he mistaken?

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What did Rassendyll feel when he found himself in front of the future King of Ruritania?

a) He regretted meeting him.	b) He felt happy.
c) He was extremely sad.	d) He had a strange feeling.
2. Why did Rassendyll and the future King of Ruritania stand looking at each other in silence?

a) Because they looked exactly the same.	b) Because they both had red hair.
c) Because they would attend the coronation.	d) Because they are cousins.
3. What slight differences did Rassendyll notice between him and the King of Ruritania?

a) The King's face was less wide and Rudolf's mouth was a little thinner.	b) The King's mouth was a little thinner and Rudolf's face was less wide.
c) The King's mouth was wider and Rudolf's face was a little thinner.	d) The King's mouth was less wide and Rudolf's face was a little thinner.
4. Why did Rassendyll tell the King he was going to Strelsau?

a) To see Antoinette.	b) To see the old part.
c) To see the coronation.	d) To be a king.
5. Who first objected to Rassendyll's going to Strelsau?

a) Sapt.	b) The King.
c) Michael.	d) Fritz.
6. What did the King call Rudolf Rassendyll?

a) Cousin.	b) Brother.
c) Friend.	d) Mate.
7. It was who introduced Rassendyll to the King

a) Sapt	b) Fritz
c) Johann	d) Rudolf
8. When Fritz suggested that they shouldn't go to Strelsau, what was the King's reaction?

a) The King asked Sapt for his opinion.	b) The King asked Rassendyll for his opinion.
c) The King agreed immediately.	d) The King refused this idea.
9. What did the King invite Rudolf to do?

a) To have dinner with him in the palace.	b) To go to the coronation.
c) To have dinner in the hunting lodge.	d) To visit the castle of Zenda.
10. Where was the King staying in the forest?

a) In the hunting lodge.	b) Near the inn.
c) In the mansion.	d) In the castle of Zenda.
11. Who was Josef?

a) He was a servant to Sapt.	b) He was a servant to Fritz.
c) He was a servant to the King.	d) He was a servant to the Duke.
12. Where did the King and Rudolf Rassendyll have dinner together?

a) In the palace.	b) In the hunting lodge.
c) Near the border.	d) In the capital.
13. What did Colonel Sapt advise the King to do concerning dinner in the hunting lodge?

a) Not to eat much.	b) To eat as much as he can.
c) Not to eat the cake.	d) Not to eat at all.
14. Why did Colonel Sapt advise the King not to eat too much for dinner?

a) The food may be poisonous.	b) They had to leave early the next day.
c) So that he could eat more cakes.	d) He shouldn't eat before going to bed.
15. Why did Rassendyll eat a lot when the King invited him to dinner?

a) He was hungry after his long walk.	b) The food tasted very salty.
c) The cakes were delicious.	d) He hadn't eaten much at the inn.

16. What did the King's servant bring him at the end of his meal?

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| a) He brought the King some juice. | b) He brought the King some coffee. |
| c) He brought the King some tea. | d) He brought the King some cakes. |

17. Why didn't Fritz and Sapt eat very much?

- | | |
|--------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| a) They went on a diet. | b) They thought the dinner wasn't delicious. |
| c) They would have an important meeting the day after. | d) They would have to get up early the next day. |

18. At first, Rassendyll objected to replacing the King because

- | | |
|---------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| a) He was English and he might make mistakes. | b) He was very frightened and coward. |
| c) He was English and people might recognize him. | d) Michael might kill him. |

19. Why did Fritz and Colonel Sapt hide the King in the cellar of the hunting lodge?

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| a) So that he wouldn't eat the cake. | b) So that Josef would dress him for the coronation. |
| c) They didn't want him to escape. | d) They didn't want Michael's men to get him. |

20. What happened at the end of the meal?

- | | |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| a) The King was poisoned. | b) Michael kidnapped the King. |
| c) The King was crowned. | d) The King refused to go to the coronation. |

21. How did Colonel Sapt wake Rudolf Rassendyll up?

- | | |
|-------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| a) He asked Fritz to call Rassendyll out. | b) He threw flowers over him. |
| c) He called him out loudly. | d) He threw water over him. |

22. Why couldn't Colonel Sapt and Fritz wake up the King the next morning in the hunting lodge?

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| a) He had slept too late. | b) He was extremely tired. |
| c) It seemed that he had been poisoned. | d) He ate too many cakes. |

23. Sapt wake Rassendyll up about in the morning.

- | | |
|------|------|
| a) 5 | b) 6 |
| c) 7 | d) 8 |

24. Sapt wanted Rassendyll to attend the coronation instead of the king for the sake of

- | | |
|--------------|---------------|
| a) the King. | b) Ruritania. |
| c) the Duke. | d) himself. |

25. What was the effect of eating the cake on the King?

- | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| a) His face was red and he breathed normally. | b) His pulse was weak and his face was blue. |
| c) He was breathing heavily and his pulse was strong. | d) His face was red and he breathed heavily. |

26. Why was it difficult to bring a doctor to help the King?

- | | |
|-------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| a) There were no doctors in Zenda. | b) There was no doctor for 15 kilometres. |
| c) Doctors would refuse to help the King. | d) Doctors were asleep at that time. |

27. Why was Duke Michael trying to prevent the King from going to the coronation?

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| a) He wanted to become the new king. | b) The coronation was delayed. |
| c) The coronation was cancelled. | d) It would be dangerous for the King to go. |

28. What would happen if Rudolf Elphberg wasn't crowned on the stated day?

- | | |
|----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| a) He would put off the coronation. | b) Duke Michael would be very angry. |
| c) Duke Michael would cancel the coronation. | d) He wouldn't ever be the king. |

29. What would happen if Duke Michael managed to take the crown?

- | | |
|----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| a) Duke Michael would reward Sapt and Fritz. | b) The King would either be dead or in prison. |
| c) The King would live abroad. | d) The King would congratulate him. |

30. How did Fritz persuade Rassendyll to take the place of the King?

- | | |
|--------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| a) He said that Rassendyll's German was perfect. | b) He said that on dressing Rassendyll like the King, no one would realize he wasn't the real king |
| c) He said the country needed this. | d) a and b are correct |

31. According to Rassendyll, what wouldn't the King forgive him for?

- | | |
|------------------------|-------------------------------|
| a) Taking his place. | b) Taking the throne. |
| c) Saving the country. | d) locking him in the cellar. |

32. Who dressed Rassendyll in the King's clothes?

a) Sapt.	b) Josef.
c) Johann.	d) Fritz.

33. What did Colonel Sapt suggest to prevent Duke Michael from taking the crown?

a) Rassendyll could replace the King.	b) Rassendyll could be the king forever.
c) They could tell the people the truth.	d) Fritz could replace the King.

34. Why was Rudolf Rassendyll the ideal person to replace the King?

a) He was brave.	b) He looked exactly like the King.
c) His French was perfect.	d) He deserved to be the king.

35. What was Johann's mother job?

a) She was a servant of the Duke.	b) She was Josef's wife.
c) She was a servant of the King.	d) She was a spy of Rassendyll.

36. What did they do with Johann's mother when they discovered she overheard their plan?

a) They asked Josef to let her out at once.	b) They had to kill her.
c) They locked her in the cellar with the King.	d) They had to change their plan.

37. Why was Johann's mother locked in the cellar with the king?

a) She overheard Colonel Sapt's plan.	b) So as not to leave the King alone.
c) To protect him from Michael's men.	d) She was poisoned like the King.

38. Josef would be left in the hunting lodge

a) to tell Michael's men that the King had a twin called Rassendyll.	b) to tell Michael's men that the King had left the hunting lodge.
c) to tell Michael's men to wait for the King.	d) to tell Michael's men that the King was in the cellar.

39. Johann's mother and the King are locked in the

a) attic.	b) hunting lodge.
c) cellar.	d) roof.

40. Why did Sapt, Fritz and Rassendyll go to the station early instead of waiting for Duke Michael's guards?

a) They thought the guards wouldn't come.	b) They thought the guards would be too late.
c) They thought the guards would kill them.	d) They didn't want to disturb the guards.

41. What things did Sapt tell Rassendyll on their way to the palace?

a) He told him how to be brave.	b) He told him all about the King's life.
c) He told him how to deal with Ruritanians.	d) He told him how to deal with Duke Michael.

42. What did Fritz tell the station guard to justify their early coming to the station?

a) The King had changed his plans.	b) The King was locked in.
c) The King was poisoned.	d) The guards didn't come.

43. What was the first thing Fritz, Sapt and Rassendyll do when they reached the capital?

a) To go straight to the palace.	b) To wait for Duke Michael.
c) To greet the people in the palace.	d) To eat breakfast at the train station.

44. Why weren't there people from the palace at the station to meet Rassendyll, Fritz and Sapt?

a) The King (Rassendyll) arrived earlier than planned.	b) Duke Michael refused to send them.
c) They were busy working in the palace.	d) The Marshal prevented them.

45. What did Sapt mean by saying "Let's hope we are all alive tonight."?

a) They will escape after the coronation.	b) The King would be angry and would punish them.
c) If Michael knew about their plan, he might kill them.	d) The Marshal would arrest them.

46. Who did Sapt mean by saying "God save both kings"?

a) Rassendyll and the real King.	b) Princess Flavia and the real King.
c) Michael and Rassendyll.	d) The King and his brother.

47. Who was Marshal Strakencz?

a) An ambassador from England.	b) An important person in the Ruritanian army.
c) An important person in the British army.	d) One of the King's friends.

48. Why did Fritz feel very nervous when he shook Marshal Strakencz's hand?

a) The Marshal might discover that Rassendyll wasn't the real King.	b) The Marshal might discover that Rassendyll was the real King.
c) The Marshal was an important person in the Ruritania army.	d) The Marshal might recognise Rassendyll.

49. What kind of life did rich people live in the capital of Strelsau?

a) They were crowded into tiny houses.	b) They suffered from financial problems.
c) They lived well under the King's father.	d) They lived an uncomfortable life in big houses.

50. What kind of life did poor people live in Strelsau?

a) They had no social problems.	b) People were crowded into wide houses.
c) They lived well under the King's father.	d) They lived a hard life.

51. Who did the rich of Strelsau support: the King or Duke Michael?

a) The King	b) Duke Michael
c) Both of them	d) Neither of them

52. Why would the poor people of Strelsau support Duke Michael?

a) They wanted things to stay the same.	b) They didn't want things to be different.
c) They liked the King.	d) Michael gave them hope for a better future.

53. Why was Rassendyll afraid when he saw Antoinette de Mauban staring at him in Strelsau?

a) He is afraid that she wouldn't tell the truth.	b) She was working for Duke Michael.
c) She might recognise that he is not the real King.	d) She knew the real King.

54. The people received the King

a) cheering, with coloured clothes and colourful ribbons.	b) shouting, with coloured clothes and colourful ribbons.
c) cheering, with coloured flags and colourful ribbons.	d) angrily throwing flowers at him.

Chapter 3

1) Answer the following questions:

- Why did Rassendyll feel that the Marshal insulted him?
- What does Rassendyll do when the Marshal wants him to ride through the old part of town?
- Why is Sapt so anxious about Rassendyll's decision to ride alone through the old town?
- Why does Duke Michael's face turn white when he sees "the King" (Rassendyll)?
- Does the Princess know that this is not the real King? What does she say about him?
- Why do Rassendyll and Sapt need a permit to leave the city?
- How do they get a permit from the King?
- What does Fritz do while Sapt and Rassendyll go to Zenda?
- How do Sapt and Rassendyll get out of the palace? Why do they go this way?
- Who else is riding to Zenda? Which way do they go at the fork in the road? Which way do Sapt and Rassendyll go?
- What do Sapt and Rassendyll find inside the lodge?
- What could Rudolf Rassendyll remember of the coronation later on?
- How did Duke Michael and his men know that the King was in the cellar?
- Which faces could Rassendyll remember well during the coronation?
- What happened in the hunting lodge while Rassendyll was being crowned?
- Why did Sapt get off his horse and put his ear on the ground?
- Why wouldn't Michael approve of Rassendyll's visit to the old part?

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Who did Rassendyll see that might recognize him on his way to the palace?

- | | |
|--------------------------|------------------|
| a) Johann's sister. | b) Duke Michael. |
| c) Antoinette de Mauban. | d) Rose. |

2. What order did Marshal Strakencz give to his men?

- | | |
|----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| a) To enter the poor part of the town. | b) To arrest Rassendyll as he wasn't the king. |
| c) To enter the rich part of the town. | d) To let the King enter the old part alone. |

3. To whom were most people who lived in the old part of the city loyal?

- | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| a) Lord Topham. | b) The real King. |
| c) Rassendyll. | d) Duke Michael. |

4. Why did Rudolf Rassendyll want to ride on his own through the poor part of Strelsau?

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| a) To show the poor people their King was brave. | b) To show the rich people their King trusted them. |
| c) To show the poor people their King trusted them. | d) To show the poor people their King suspected them. |

5. Why did Rassendyll think carefully before riding through the poor streets of the town?

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| a) The people there supported the King. | b) He thought he might be killed there. |
| c) He thought Sapt would be sad. | d) He thought Michael wouldn't like that. |

6. How did Rassendyll try to improve the King's image in the minds of poor people?

- | | |
|----------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| a) He rode through the poor area alone. | b) He decided to marry Flavia. |
| c) He rode through the poor area with Fritz. | d) He refused to ride through the poor area. |

7. Why was Sapt so anxious about Rassendyll's decision to ride alone through the old town?

- | | |
|--------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| a) His position would be easy. | b) He wanted to go with him. |
| c) He was afraid that the Marshal would be hurt. | d) The people there supported the Duke. |

8. Why did Rassendyll shout at Marshal Strakencz?

- | | |
|------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| a) To order his soldiers to ride ahead of him. | b) To order his soldiers to return to the lodge. |
| c) To order his soldiers to get him more food. | d) To order his soldiers to go to the station. |

9. What was the poor people's reaction when they saw Rassendyll on his own?

- | | |
|--------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| a) All of them were cheering and smiling. | b) None of them were cheering and smiling. |
| c) Some of them were cheering and smiling. | d) Most of them were holding Michael's pictures. |

10. What made Rassendyll think that Duke Michael was popular in the old town?

- | | |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| a) Fritz told him that. | b) Sapt told him that. |
| c) He saw many paintings of the Duke in their windows. | d) He heard the poor people talk well about Duke Michael. |

11. Why were the people in the old part surprised?

- | | |
|----------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| a) The King was on his own and his hair was red. | b) The King was riding his horse. |
| c) The King was on his own and his skin was white. | d) The King's clothes were dirty. |

12. Why couldn't Lord Topham recognize Rudolf Rassendyll?

- | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| a) He had poor eyesight. | b) He couldn't hear well. |
| c) He lost his glasses. | d) He wasn't concentrating. |

13. What could Rassendyll remember of the coronation later on?

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| a) The Duke's greeting him warmly. | b) The promises the Duke was asked to read out. |
| c) The songs that were beautiful. | d) The golden crown being put on his head. |

14. Who was Princess Flavia?

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| a) She was Rudolf Elphberg's wife. | b) She was a royal cousin to Rudolf Elphberg. |
| c) Rassendyll fiancée. | d) A servant of Rudolf Elphberg. |

15. What was Duke Michael's reaction when he saw Rassendyll before the coronation?

- | | |
|---------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| a) His face became white. | b) He congratulated Rassendyll warmly. |
| c) He told people that Rassendyll wasn't the real King. | d) He decided to kill the real King. |

16. Michael's hands shook with anger when he congratulated Rassendyll because

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| a) he knew his plan would be a success. | b) he recognised that he was not his brother. |
| c) he knew that Rassendyll was the real King. | d) he knew that his brother had been poisoned. |

17. Why did Rudolf Rassendyll feel worried when he saw a man he knew from England?

- | | |
|-------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| a) He wanted no one to recognize him. | b) He thought the man would recognize the King. |
| c) He thought the man would recognize the Duke. | d) He thought the man would congratulate him. |

18. What did Princess Flavia think about Rassendyll's ride through the old town alone?

- | | |
|------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| a) The King could have been killed there. | b) The King shouldn't have done so. |
| c) He King should have walked in the new part of town too. | d) The people there must have appreciated what the King had done. |

19. According to Flavia, how did the King (Rassendyll) look different on the day of coronation?

- | | |
|----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| a) She thought he looked fit and lazy. | b) She thought he looked more tired and serious. |
| c) She thought he was worried. | d) She thought that he was fatter. |

20. Sapt and Fritz were happy after the coronation because

- | | |
|---------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| a) Rassendyll rode alone in the old part of town. | b) Their plan had been a success. |
| c) Michael's plan was a success. | d) They knew that Michael had news from Zenda. |

21. Why was Fritz against the idea that Rassendyll should become popular with the poor people?

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| a) Duke Michael wouldn't like it. | b) The Marshal wouldn't like it. |
| c) Flavia would like it. | d) The people there wouldn't support the King. |

22. Why did Rassendyll and Sapt need a permit to leave the city?

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| a) Michael wouldn't allow them to leave Strelsau. | b) The King wouldn't allow them to leave Strelsau. |
| c) The gates through the palace were closed at that time. | d) The gates through the city wall were closed at that time. |

23. How did Rassendyll and Sapt get a permit from the King to leave the city?

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| a) Rassendyll signed the paper. | b) Sapt signed the paper. |
| c) Duke Michael gave them a permit. | d) Duke Michael asked the King to sign it. |

24. What did Fritz do while Sapt and Rassendyll went to Zenda?

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| a) He let everyone inside the room. | b) He slept in his room. |
| c) He stayed and guarded the bedroom. | d) He allowed just Michael to enter the room. |

25. Rassendyll couldn't copy the King's signature because

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| a) He couldn't write like the King. | b) He didn't see the King's signature. |
| c) His finger was injured. | d) He couldn't read or write. |

26. What did Rassendyll need to be able to leave the city?

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| a) He needed to see Flavia first. | b) He needed a permit from the King. |
| c) He needed a permit from Michael. | d) He needed to go through the palace gate. |

27. Why did Rassendyll have to leave the country as soon as he could?

- | | |
|------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| a) Michael didn't know who the King was. | b) Michael knew that Rassendyll was the real King. |
| c) Michael had news from Zenda. | d) Michael was planning something for Flavia. |

28. Why did Sapt ask Rassendyll to take a gun with him on their way back to the hunting lodge?

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| a) To fight Michael and his guards. | b) He might need it to get through the city gates. |
| c) He might need it to kill the guards. | d) To fight the Marshal. |

29. How did Sapt and Rassendyll get out of the palace?

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| a) They went through the main gate. | b) They went through the moat. |
| c) They went through a secret panel. | d) They took a permit from Duke Michael. |

30. Sapt and Rassendyll went through a secret passage in the wall because

- | | |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| a) The main palace gate was closed. | b) They didn't have a permit to leave. |
| c) They wanted people to think that the King wasn't in his bedroom. | d) They didn't want anyone to see them. |

31. What made Rassendyll cover his face and hair and try to stay low on the horse?

- | | |
|--------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| a) So as not to be recognized. | b) To reach the hunting lodge more quickly. |
| c) People would know he was the real King. | d) People would realize he was still awake. |

32. Sapt felt when he knocked on the gate.

- | | |
|-------------|--------------|
| a) worried | b) delighted |
| c) relieved | d) puzzled |

33. What did Sapt do to persuade the guard's daughter at the gate to give him the key?

- | | |
|-------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| a) He gave her a form from the Duke and a coin. | b) He gave her a form from the King and a ring. |
| c) He gave her a form from the King and a coin. | d) He told her that Rassendyll was the King. |

34. Why was nearly everyone in Strelsau in the streets?

- | | |
|------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| a) To celebrate the wedding of the King. | b) To ask Duke Michael to be the King. |
| c) To ask the King to leave Ruritania. | d) To celebrate the coronation. |

35. Why could Sapt and Rassendyll hear the people coming behind them?

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| a) Because the wind was blowing against them. | b) Because the wind was very strong. |
| c) Because there was no wind. | d) Because the wind was blowing towards them. |

36. Why did Colonel Sapt get off his horse and put his ear to the ground?

- | | |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| a) He wanted to know how many persons were following them. | b) He wanted to make sure if there was anyone coming in front of them. |
| c) He knew that Michael and Max Holf were coming behind them. | d) He wanted to know who was following them. |

37. Why did Sapt and Rassendyll hide in dark trees?

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| a) To see Duke Michael and Max Holf. | b) To know where the followers were going. |
| c) To see who was coming behind them. | d) Both b and c. |

38. Why did Sapt and Rassendyll stop at an inn on the road to Zenda?

- | | |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| a) To rest and have a drink. | b) so that their horses could have a drink. |
| c) To help poor people in the inn. | d) To meet the Marshal. |

39. Who else was riding to Zenda other than Sapt and Rassendyll?

- | | |
|-------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| a) Duke Michael and his servant Max Holf. | b) Duke Michael and his servant Johann. |
| c) Duke Michael and Flavia. | d) Duke Michael and the Marshal. |

40. Who was Max Holf?

- | | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| a) He worked for the real King. | b) He was servant of Flavia. |
| c) Rassendyll's best friend. | d) He was Johann's brother. |

41. Why did Michael and Max stop at the fork?

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| a) To wait for Sapt and Rassendyll. | b) because they felt tired. |
| c) To decide which way they would take. | d) To take a rest. |

42. Which way did Sapt and Rassendyll go at the fork in the road?

- | | |
|------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| a) They went towards the city walls. | b) They went to the right to the hunting lodge. |
| c) They went to the left to the hunting lodge. | d) They went to the left to Zenda. |

43. Which way did Duke Michael and Max Holf go at the fork in the road?

- | | |
|------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| a) They went to the right to reach the Castle. | b) They went to the left to reach the Castle. |
| c) They went to the left to reach the inn. | d) They went to the left to reach the Capital. |

44. Max Holf thought they had to go to the castle not the hunting lodge to

- | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------|
| a) imprison the King. | b) save the King. |
| c) kidnap the King. | d) know the truth. |

45. Why didn't Sapt shoot Duke Michael when he saw him in the forest with Max Holf?

- | | |
|-------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| a) He realized that Michael was innocent. | b) He realized Michael deserved to be killed. |
| c) He was afraid of punishment. | d) It wouldn't have helped the King at that moment. |

46. What do you think the message "all is well" means?

a) The King was still alive.	b) The King was killed.
c) The King Johann's mother were both released.	d) The King was kidnapped and locked in the castle.

47. Why did Max Holf refuse to go to the hunting lodge?

a) He feared that it was a trap.	b) He loved the castle.
c) It was far.	d) No one would be there.

48. What did Sapt use to tie the mother of Johann?

a) Ropes.	b) Chains.
c) Leather.	d) Handkerchiefs.

49. What did Sapt and Rudolf find as soon as they reached the hunting lodge?

a) Josef was waiting for them.	b) The King was ready to return with Sapt.
c) The guard had killed Johann's mother.	d) It was dark and quiet. No one came out to meet them.

50. What did Rudolf Rassendyll find in the dark room in the hunting lodge?

a) He found Josef's body.	b) He found that the King was injured.
c) He found that the King was killed.	d) He found that Johann's mother was killed.

51. "I'm afraid he is dead?" Who was really dead?

a) Rassendyll.	b) Sapt.
c) Josef.	d) The King.

52. Who freed Johann's mother in the hunting lodge?

a) Rassendyll, Sapt and Fritz.	b) Max Half.
c) Duke Michael's men.	d) Josef.

53. Why did Michael's men free Johann's mother in the hunting lodge?

a) She worked against the Duke.	b) She worked for the Duke and she told them about the King.
c) She helped them to injure the King.	d) She would tell Sapt about them.

54. Why did Duke Michael's men kidnap King Rudolf the Fifth?

a) To prevent Rassendyll from becoming King.	b) Michael wanted Rassendyll to take the crown.
c) To help Rassendyll become King.	d) Duke Michael wanted to take the crown.

55. Why did Rassendyll suggest collecting every soldier in Strelsau?

a) To catch Michael before he killed the King.	b) To catch Michael before he kidnapped the King.
c) To prevent the Marshal from becoming king.	d) To protect Rassendyll from Michael's men.

56. How did Duke Michael's men know that the King was in the cellar?

a) Josef told them he was there.	b) Johann's mother must have told them.
c) They heard him ask for their help.	d) Duke Michael told them he was in the cellar.

57. What would have happened if Sapt, Fritz and Rudolf Rassendyll hadn't escaped to Strelsau?

a) The King would have been killed.	b) They would have been killed.
c) Michael's men would have killed Josef.	d) Michael's men would escape before being arrested.

58. Rassendyll didn't leave Ruritania on the same day of the coronation because

a) The King had been killed.	b) The King had been kidnapped.
c) He wanted to spend another day in the country.	d) Duke Michael wanted him to continue the game.

59. What did Sapt ask Rassendyll to do after they discovered that the King had been kidnapped?

a) To return to his country.	b) To attack Duke Michael.
c) To continue the game.	d) To remain a king forever.

60. "The King will be back in the capital again tomorrow!" How will the King be back in the capital tomorrow?

a) They will save him.	b) Michael will release him.
c) Rassendyll will continue the game.	d) The King will escape from the castle.

Chapter 4

1) Answer the following questions:

1. What does Sapt plan to do if the real King is dead?
2. What made Rassendyll tell Sapt that he is mad?
3. How was Rassendyll get the injury in his finger?
4. Why does Rassendyll use a new servant who has never met the real King? Who is the servant replacing?
5. Who are the Six Men? Where are they from? Why are only three in Strelsau?
6. Rassendyll decides to keep some of his plans secret from Sapt and Fritz. What are those plans?
7. Why does he visit the Princess?
8. What does he do on the way? How do these things make him more popular?
9. Why can't Michael come into the room when the King is there?
10. What mistake does Rassendyll make? How does he cover up his mistake?
11. Why does Rassendyll begin to worry about his own safety?
12. How did Rudolf Rassendyll escape when Michael's men were about to trap him?
13. Why did hundreds of people follow Rudolf Rassendyll on his way to the home of Princess Flavia?
14. What things made Rassendyll popular with people?
15. Describe the three foreigners of the Six Men.
16. Why did Flavia send her servant to the King next morning?
17. When did Michael steam with anger?

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Sapt wanted Rassendyll to return to the capital and continue the game because

a) the king was killed in Zenda.	b) if he refused to return, Michael would be Duke.
c) Duke Michael married Flavia.	d) the King was kidnapped by Michael's men.
2. Why did Rassendyll think that Sapt's second plan was too dangerous?

a) No one knew that he wasn't the real King.	b) Flavia knew that he wasn't the real King.
c) The Duke and his men knew that he wasn't the real King.	d) All people in Ruritania knew that he wasn't the real King.
3. Why couldn't the Duke say anything about Rassendyll even though he knew Rassendyll was not the real King?

a) Half of his men were foreigners.	b) His men freed the king and injured his servant.
c) His men sent him a message.	d) His men kidnapped the King and killed his servant.
4. What kind of doubts did Rudolf Rassendyll have about pretending to be the king?

a) A king's life is difficult.	b) No one would realise that he wasn't the real King.
c) His life would be in danger.	d) Flavia might refuse to marry him.
5. What did Sapt plan to do if the real King was dead?

a) He would ask the Marshal to become king.	b) Rassendyll would remain as king.
c) He would become king.	d) Duke Michael would become king.
6. What would happen if Rassendyll refused to return to the capital?

a) Michael would take the crown.	b) The real king would be freed.
c) Michael would be sad.	d) Michael would try to kill Rassendyll.
7. According to Sapt, when would Rassendyll stay king for life?

a) If the Duke was killed.	b) If the real King was set free.
c) If the real King was killed.	d) If they could rescue the King.
8. Michael's men went back to the hunting lodge carrying spades to

a) bury Josef's body.	b) bury king's body.
c) search for Josef's body.	d) kidnap the King.
9. What did Rassendyll mean that some of those evil men should join Josef?

a) Some of them should be killed.	b) Some of them should travel with Josef.
c) Some of them should work with Josef.	d) Some of them should work for the King.

10. What was the reaction of Duke Michael's men when Sapt and Rassendyll attacked them at the hunting lodge?

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| a) They refused to meet them. | b) They were prepared. |
| c) They welcomed them warmly. | d) They looked shocked to see them. |

11. Why couldn't Rassendyll continue fighting Michael's men?

- | | |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| a) There were men all around Sapt. | b) Rassendyll was about to be trapped. |
| c) Michael's men were brave. | d) Michael's men were shooting him. |

12. How do you know that Michael's men saw who Rassendyll was?

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| a) One of the men said, "It's the King". | b) One of them saw his red hair. |
| c) One of the men was a friend of Rassendyll. | d) One of the men saw Rassendyll in the station. |

13. How did Rassendyll escape when Michael's men were about to trap him?

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| a) He escaped through a secret passage. | b) He killed some of them. |
| c) He shot some of them. | d) He escaped through a gap. |

14. How was Rassendyll injured in the fight against Michael's men?

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| a) One of Michael's men stabbed him. | b) One of Michael's men hit him with a rock. |
| c) One of Michael's men shot him. | d) One of Michael's men cut his finger. |

15. Why did Sapt praise Rassendyll in facing Michael's men?

- | | |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|
| a) He escaped easily from them. | b) He killed two of them. |
| c) He was shot by them. | d) He was trapped by them. |

16. What did Sapt do to help Rassendyll whose finger hurt badly?

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| a) He sent Rassendyll a doctor. | b) He put a piece of cloth on Rassendyll's finger. |
| c) He cut on Rassendyll's finger. | d) He put some medicine on Rassendyll's finger. |

17. How did Rassendyll hide his identity when they reached a farm on their way back?

- | | |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| a) He didn't talk to him. | b) He covered his head, saying he had a headache. |
| c) He stayed out of the farm. | d) He covered his face, saying he had a bad tooth. |

18. Why were the streets of Strelsau very quiet on their return from the hunting lodge?

- | | |
|---------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| a) Most people were resting after the coronation. | b) Most people were tired of work. |
| c) Most people had left the capital. | d) Most people were lazy. |

19. Who was Freyler?

- | | |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| a) He was one of King's friends. | b) He was one of Rassendyll's friends. |
| c) He was a servant of Sapt. | d) He was one of the Duke's men. |

20. How did Sapt explain Rassendyll's injured finger to Freyler?

- | | |
|------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| a) Rassendyll had fallen of his horse. | b) Rassendyll had an accident. |
| c) Rassendyll had caught his finger in a door. | d) Rassendyll was shot in a fight. |

21. Why did Sapt say to Freyler "All young men like to ride their horses now and then, so why not the King?"

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| a) To tell him the truth about the real King. | b) To tell him they were in the hunting lodge. |
| c) To tell him why the King was hurt. | d) He didn't want him to know where they were. |

22. Why did Rassendyll use a new servant who had never met the real King?

- | | |
|--------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| a) Because Josef had been killed. | b) To help the new King. |
| c) Because Rassendyll looked like the real King. | d) Not to realise that Rassendyll was not the real King. |

23. Who was the new servant at the palace replacing?

- | | |
|------------|-----------------|
| a) Josef. | b) The Six Men. |
| c) Johann. | d) Fritz. |

24. Why did Princess Flavia send her servant to the royal palace?

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| a) To ask Rassendyll about the King. | b) To check if Rassendyll was the real King. |
| c) To find out how Rassendyll was feeling after the coronation. | d) To find out how the King was feeling after the coronation. |

25. What did Rassendyll tell Flavia's servant?

a) He asked the servant to send the princess his thanks.	b) He asked the servant to tell her that he had never felt better in his life.
c) He asked the servant to invite her to dinner.	d) Both a and b are correct.

26. Where was King Rudolf Elphberg?

a) He was in the palace.	b) He was buried beside Josef.
c) He was held prisoner at the castle of Zenda.	d) He was in the hunting lodge.

27. Who told Rudolf Rassendyll about the King's duties?

a) Duke Michael.	b) Sapt.
c) Marshal Strakencz.	d) Fritz.

28. According to Rudolf Rassendyll, what is a pretend King's life like?

a) It is harder than a real King's life.	b)) It is easier than a real King's life.
c) It is as hard as a real King's life.	d) It is less difficult than a real King's life.

29. Why is a pretend King's life harder than a real King's life?

a) People might discover him.	b) He met a lot of people.
c) He signed a lot of documents.	d) He didn't know all the rules.

30. Why did Rassendyll feel worried when he met the French ambassador?

a) The ambassador was Rassendyll's classmate.	b) He couldn't answer the ambassador question.
c) He worked for the ambassador before.	d) The ambassador knew Rassendyll from England.

31. According to sap, why shouldn't Rassendyll worry about the French ambassador's question?

a) As the real King wouldn't have been able to answer either.	b) As he is ignorant.
c) He is weak sighted.	d) both b and c are correct.

32. How did Rassendyll's injured finger affect his duties as a King?

a) People knew he wasn't a king.	b) Many important documents were not completed.
c) He couldn't read or write.	d) He couldn't write letters to Flavia.

33. Why did Fritz object to having a rest?

a) As he wanted to attack Michael.	b) He liked work.
c) To sleep.	d) To earn more.

34. Why did Sapt think that Duke Michael wouldn't kill the King?

a) Because Michael was kind.	b) Because Michael loved his brother.
c) If Michael killed the King, Rassendyll would kill him.	d) If Michael killed the King, Rassendyll would stay as King instead.

35. Why couldn't Michael accuse Rudolf Rassendyll of anything?

a) People would know that he had kidnapped the King.	b) Rassendyll was innocent.
c) People would know that Rassendyll was a good king.	d) People would know that Rassendyll was a liar.

36. According to Rassendyll, why couldn't they accuse the Duke in public?

a) People would ask them let Rassendyll be a King forever.	b) They couldn't do that without admitting that he wasn't the real King.
c) People would be happy that the King was kidnapped.	d) Both a and b are correct.

37. What did it mean that only three of Michael's Six Men were with him in Strelsau?

a) The other three men disobeyed Michael.	b) The other three men were loyal to the King.
c) The other three men were guarding the King.	d) The other three men were foreigners.

38. What plans did Rassendyll decide to keep secret from his friends?

a) To make himself as popular as he could.	b) Not to say anything bad about Michael.
c) Both a) and b) are correct	d) To marry Flavia.

39. Why did Rassendyll decide to make himself popular?

a) To stop the poorer people of Strelsau from thinking badly of him.	b) If there were a fight, people wouldn't want to follow Michael.
c) To remain a king forever.	d) both a and b are correct

40. Why did Rassendyll want to be seen most in the old town?

a) Most of the rich people lived in the old town.	b) He wanted the poor people to think well about him.
c) Most of the poor people loved Sapt.	d) He wanted the rich people to think well about him.

41. What would Rassendyll do in order not to be a distant king?

a) He would be seen most in the rich town.	b) He would leave the country.
c) He would be seen most in the old town.	d) He would befriend Michael.

42. What did Rassendyll do on his way to visit Princess Flavia?

a) He waved to Fritz who bowed to him.	b) He bought flowers from a poor young girl.
c) He entered the old part alone.	d) He bought her some chocolate.

43. What did Rassendyll decide to do while talking with the princess? Why?

a) To tell her the truth.	b) To ask for her hand.
c) To be very careful while talking to her.	d) To criticize Michael.

44. Why was Rassendyll very careful when he talked to Princess Flavia?

a) He wanted her to speak freely.	b) She would realize that he wasn't the real King.
c) She would realize that he loved her.	d) She would realize that he hated Duke Michael.

45. Who went with Rassendyll on his visit to the Princess's palace?

a) People of the rich part of town.	b) All people of the poor part of town.
c) Fritz.	d) Duke Michael.

46. Why did Rassendyll visit the Princess?

a) He wanted to get her support.	b) To buy her some flowers.
c) He wanted to make Duke Michael angry.	d) To ask her for marriage.

47. How did his visit to the Princess make him more popular?

a) The visit made him look kind to the princess.	b) The visit made all people like the Princess.
c) The visit made Duke Michael happy.	d) The visit made the people happy.

48. Why was there a loud cheer from the streets outside the Princess's palace?

a) Fritz was waiting for Rassendyll outside.	b) Sapt was also visiting the Princess.
c) The King was coming into Flavia's house.	d) The Duke was coming into Flavia's house.

49. Why couldn't Michael come into the guest room when the King was there?

a) The "King" didn't give him permission.	b) The "King" was talking to Flavia.
c) He didn't want to talk to the "King".	d) He didn't know that the King was inside the room.

50. What mistake did Rassendyll make when he was visiting Flavia?

a) He refused to ask Duke Michael in.	b) He asked Duke Michael to remain outside.
c) He asked Duke Michael in.	d) He did not ask Duke Michael in.

51. How did he cover up his mistake?

a) By saying that he kept forgetting all the rules.	b) By saying that he wanted his brother beside him.
c) By saying that his brother never wanted to talk to him.	d) By saying that his brother preferred to stay outside the room.

52. Rassendyll said that his hand was hurt from an animal bite. Who was he talking about?

a) He was really talking about Michael's Six Men.	b) He was really talking about Michael.
c) He was really talking about Sapt.	d) He was really talking about a real animal.

53. What did Rassendyll tell Michael about the cause of the injury in his hand?

a) He fought his men.	b) One of Michael's men shot him.
c) He caught his finger into a door.	d) An animal bit him.

54. What did The King (Rudolf Rassendyll) thank Duke Michael for?

a) The delicious cakes.	b) The splendid coronation.
c) The beautiful music.	d) The golden crown.

55. What did Michael do when Rudolf Rassendyll thanked him for the great coronation?

a) He said that he was happy to help.	b) He asked Rassendyll to meet his Six Men outside.
c) He told Flavia that Rassendyll wasn't the real King.	d) He jumped to his feet and walked angrily to the door.

56. How did the Duke introduce the three foreigners to Rassendyll?

a) He said that they were criminals.	b) He said that they would try to kill Rassendyll.
c) He said that they were the most loyal and honest of the Duke's men.	d) He said that they were the most loyal and honest of the King's men.

57. Rassendyll was worried when he met three of Michael's Six Men because

a) He realised that they knew he was the real King.	b) He realised that they knew he was not the real King.
c) He realised that they kidnapped the real King.	d) He realised that they would kill Flavia.

58. How did Rassendyll speak to Detchard?

a) In English with a really good accent.	b) In English with a pure British accent.
c) In English with a pretend foreign accent.	d) In German with a pretend foreign accent.

59. How did Rassendyll know that the Six Men also know his secret?

a) Because of the way Michael smiled at him.	b) Because of the way Detchard talked to him.
c) Because of the way Detchard smiled at him.	d) Because of the way the three men smiled at him.

60. What was Detchard like?

a) He was an Englishman and he had a thin face, strong shoulders and very short hair.	b) He looked like a good fighter and a bad character.
c) He was a Frenchman with straight hair.	d) Both a and b are correct

Chapter 5

1) Answer the following questions:

- Why did Flavia warn Rassendyll?
- Rassendyll has never liked responsibilities. Now he has many. What responsibilities does he have?
- Sapt brings news of the real King. What is it?
- Why does Rassendyll want to go to Zenda?
- Why does Sapt have Rassendyll followed everywhere? What does he mean by "If you disappear, the game's over"?
- When Rassendyll talks to Detchard at the summer house, what does Detchard offer him?
- How does Rassendyll come out of the summer house alive?
- Why have they prepared a ball for the Princess?
- Rassendyll tells the Princess that when he was younger, he thought he didn't need to worry about society. Why does he say this? How does the Princess react? Why is it a mistake for him to say this?
- Why was Rassendyll against asking the Princess to marry him?
- The day after the ball, the Princess receives two letters. What are they and who are they from?
- What does Rassendyll do when he hears of these letters? Who does he go to?
- What does Rassendyll tell Marshal Strakencz to do?
- According to Antoinette, how did Michael plan to be King?
- Why did Rassendyll insist on going to the Summer House?
- Why wasn't Rassendyll safe in the city?
- How could Antoinette help Rassendyll escape from Michael's trap?
- When did Rassendyll know that his game has gone too far to go back?

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. How did Rassendyll feel on leaving the princess's palace?

- | | |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| a) He wasn't sorry to say goodbye to Michael and his soldier friend. | b) He was sad to say goodbye to the princess. |
| c) He was happy to escape Michael's men's anger. | d) Both a and b are correct. |

2. What did Rassendyll wish he had told the princess about?

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| a) He wished he asked her to marry him. | b) He wished she had asked her to become a queen. |
| c) He wished to tell her that he would leave the country. | d) He wished to tell her that he wasn't the real King. |

3. Why did Rassendyll wish to tell her that he wasn't the real King?

- | | |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| a) To lose her confidence. | b) Because he wasn't the man she dreamt of. |
| c) Because he thought it was wrong of him to pretend to be the real King. | d) He wanted to return to England. |

4. What did the princess ask Rassendyll to be careful about?

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| a) To be careful about his life. | b) To be careful on leaving Ruritania. |
| c) To be careful about the poor people. | d) To be careful about what to say and do. |

5. Why did she ask him to be careful about his life?

- | | |
|---------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| a) She needed his help. | b) She knew the secret of the real King. |
| c) As his life meant a lot for the people of Ruritania. | d) As Michael would need his help. |

6. What did Rassendyll remember when Flavia warned him?

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| a) He remembered what Rose had said about his one's responsibilities. | b) He remembered Fritz's warning not to enter the old part. |
| c) He remembered Sapt's advice to be a real King. | d) He remembered the Marshal's demand to his soldiers. |

7. How did Rassendyll manage to cover up his big mistakes?

- | | |
|---------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| a) He pretended he had forgotten the rules. | b) His growing popularity helped the people to forgive his mistakes. |
| c) He said he wasn't the real King. | d) Both a and b are correct. |

8. How did Rassendyll benefited from his growing popularity?

- | | |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| a) He could defeat Michael. | b) He could save the King. |
| c) He could make people forgive his occasional bad decisions. | d) He could be a king forever. |

9. Sapt had some important news of the king. What was it?

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| a) The king was at the castle of Zenda. | b) Michael escaped to Zenda. |
| c) Flavia would be the Queen. | d) Flavia sent him a letter. |

10. What made Sapt sure that the King was held a prisoner in the castle of Zenda?

- | | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| a) Because Lauengram, Krafstein and Robert Hentzau, were always at the castle. | b) The drawbridge was nearly always kept up which wasn't normal. |
| c) No one went into the castle without the permission of Robert or Michael. | d) a, b and c are correct. |

11. No one goes into the castle without or Michael's permission.

- | | |
|-------------------|--------------|
| a) Detchard | b) De Gautet |
| c) Robert Hentzau | d) Sapt |

12. Why did Sapt refuse that Rassendyll should go to Zenda at that time?

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| a) Because Sapt would save the king. | b) Because Michael would kill the King. |
| c) Because Rassendyll would stay in the castle if he did. | d) Because they had no time. |

13. Why was Rassendyll followed by six men wherever he went in the capital?

- | | |
|--------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| a) Because Sapt ordered those men to follow him. | b) Because Michael ordered them to follow Rassendyll. |
| c) Because they wanted to kill him. | d) Because they would catch him easily. |

14. What made Sapt get Rassendyll followed everywhere?

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| a) To prevent him from going to Zenda. | b) To help him free the King. |
| c) Any one of Michael's men could him easily. | d) Both b and c are correct. |

15. Why was Rassendyll angry about being followed by six men?

a) They gave him headache.	b) They disrupted his plans.
c) He didn't need such a help. He could look after himself.	d) Sapt didn't like that.

16. Who were the biggest criminals in Ruritania according to Sapt?

a) Colonel Sapt to Rassendyll.	b) Detchard, De Gautet and Bersonin.
c) Lauengram, Krafstein and young Rupert of Hentzau.	d) Antoinette and Sapt.

17. Whose statue was in the summer house?

a) A statue of Michael.	b) A statue of a king.
c) A statue of a horse.	d) A statue of a dog.

18. What did Antoinette tell Rassendyll in her first letter to him?

a) She asked him to meet her in the summer house to tell him something important about his life.	b) She asked him to go to the hunting lodge to free the King.
c) She asked him to help her escape from Michael.	d) She asked him to rescue her from the house of murderers.

19. What was the summer house like?

a) It was in a large garden at the end of a new Avenue.	b) There was a moat round the house with a drawbridge.
c) There was a statue of a horse at the gate.	d) It was in the woods of Zenda.

20. What would happen if the pretend king didn't go to the summer house?

a) The King's life would be in danger.	b) His life would be in danger.
c) Flavia's life would be in danger.	d) Michael's life would be in danger.

21. What did Antoinette ask Rassendyll not to do in her first letter?

a) She asked him not to show that to anyone.	b) She asked him not to come alone.
c) She asked him not tell Sapt.	d) She asked him not to be late.

22. Why shouldn't Rassendyll have shown Antoinette's letter to anyone?

a) The real King would be killed.	b) Flavia would punish Antoinette.
c) It would put a woman in a great danger and Michael would punish her.	d) Antoinette's servant's would be killed.

23. Who did Sapt and Rassendyll think that wrote the letter?

a) Michael.	b) Flavia.
c) Antoinette.	d) One of the Six Men.

24. What did Antoinette write on the other side of the letter?

a) To ask Sapt about her if he didn't believe her.	b) Not to show this letter to anyone.
c) To show the letter to the King.	d) To show the letter to Flavia.

25. What information did Sapt have about Antoinette?

a) She came to Ruritania with her servants as a guest of the King.	b) People said she had a great argument with Michael so she was staying somewhere in Strelsau.
c) She was a French lady who was famous for her wealth and ambition.	d) People said she wanted to marry Michael.

26. Why did Rassendyll decide to go to the summer house?

a) He thought Antoinette would be useful for them and believed her.	b) They didn't have much time and they had to move quickly to rescue the King.
c) Every day they left the king imprisoned in the castle, there was more danger.	d) a, b and c are all correct.

27. Why would Sapt go with Rassendyll to the summer house?

a) To wait for him outside the gate.	b) To be near him if he needed any help.
c) To attack Michael's men and kill Antoinette.	d) To meet Antoinette with him.

28. Why did Sapt and Rassendyll disagree about going to the summer house?

a) Sapt wanted to go instead because he didn't believe Antoinette.	b) Sapt thought that Antoinette would kill Rassendyll if he went alone.
c) Rassendyll thought Antoinette won't be useful.	d) Rassendyll thought he would find the real King there.

29. How did Rassendyll threaten Sapt to agree to go the summer house?

a) He said if he didn't go to the summer house, he would go back to England.	b) He said if he didn't go to the summer house, he would go back to Zenda.
c) He said if he didn't go to the summer house, he would kill himself.	d) He said if he didn't go to the summer house, he would tell people he wasn't the real King.

30. What made Sapt agree reluctantly that Rassendyll would go to the summer house?

a) Fritz could convince him.	b) Sapt began to know when he could tell Rassendyll what to do and he couldn't.
c) Rassendyll threatened to go back to England.	d) Both b and c are correct.

31. Rassendyll tells Sapt he can come to the summer house but he must wait outside

a) the summer house	b) the gate
c) the palace	d) the statue

32. What furniture was there in the summer house?

a) A small iron table and two chairs.	b) A new armchair.
c) Two cupboards.	d) Three sofas.

33. How did Sapt's suspicions of the letter writer come true?

a) It was a trap from the Marshal.	b) Antoinette said Michael wrote the letter.
c) Antoinette said she wrote the letter at the Duke's orders.	d) Antoinette said she wanted to help Rassendyll.

34. Why did Antoinette ask Rassendyll to leave the summer house as soon as he could?

a) Because Michael was coming to kill him.	b) Because the Marshal would arrest him.
c) Because three of Michael's men would go there to kill him.	d) Because Michael's men would put his body in the old part.

35. What was Michael's evil plan to get rid of the two kings?

a) He would poison the real King by sending him cakes.	b) He would marry Flavia.
c) He would kill Rassendyll and put his body in the old part then he would kill the real King.	d) He would arrest Rassendyll then send Sapt and Fritz to Zenda to kill the real King.

36. What would be the result of killing Rassendyll?

a) The Duke would become king as result.	b) Flavia would become a queen.
c) The marshal would become the next king.	d) Sapt and Fritz would be awarded.

37. What pushed Antoinette to help Rassendyll?

a) Because she didn't like Flavia.	b) Because she didn't like Michael.
c) Because she loved Rassendyll.	d) Because she didn't like to see people being killed.

38. According to Antoinette, why was Rassendyll never safe in Strelsau?

a) Michael's men were following him and his guards.	b) Sapt and Fritz might have killed him.
c) Poor people wanted to kill him.	d) The Princess was trying to get rid of him.

39. What did Rassendyll use to get out of the summer house safely?

a) A chair and a rope.	b) A table and a ladder.
c) A table and a sword.	d) A chair and a gun.

40. What game would Antoinette play with Michael's men?

a) She would tell them that Rassendyll never came.	b) She would kill them.
c) She would ask her servants to arrest them.	d) She would escape before their arrival.

41. On what condition would Antoinette meet Rassendyll again?

a) If the Duke didn't find out that she helped him.	b) If she could save the real King.
c) If Michael's men were killed.	d) In case she returned to Paris.

42. What did Rassendyll ask Antoinette about before he left the summer house?

a) Where the king was in the castle.	b) Why she was helping him.
c) Why she had sent him a letter.	d) Where he could meet her if he needed her help.

43. Which three men came to the summer house?

a) The Ruritians.	b) Detchard, De Gautet and Bersonin.
c) Lauengram, Krafstein and Robert Hentzau.	d) Both the Ruritians and the foreigners.

44. What offer did Detchard Rassendyll?

a) A safe journey to the border and fifty thousand English pounds.	b) A safe journey to the border and fifty thousand pieces of gold.
c) A safe journey to Zenda and fifty thousand English pounds.	d) A safe journey to the border and one million gold pieces.

45. Why did Rassendyll ask Antoinette and her servant to stand close to the wall?

a) To show them his weapons.	b) To protect himself from them.
c) So as not to see Michael's men.	d) He wanted to protect them from Michael's men.

46. How could Rassendyll protect himself before attacking Michael's men in the summer house?

a) He picked up the table and held it by the legs so it was in front of him.	b) He used Antoinette and her servants as a protective shield.
c) He hide behind the ladies.	d) He used his sword.

47. What funny story did Rassendyll want to tell Sapt?

a) The story of Michael and Antoinette.	b) The story of using an iron table to fight Michael's men.
c) The story of Flavia and Rassendyll.	d) The of King's rescue mission.

48. Detchard is wounded in the by Rassendyll's bullet.

a) leg	b) head
c) arm	d) stomach

49. What did the report from the chief of police is Strelsau say about Michael?

a) Detchard left for Zenda with a bandage around his arm.	b) The people of the capital weren't happy that the King had yet to marry the Princess.
c) The King was having a ball for the Queen.	d) The Duke left the capital by the road to Zenda

50. Why was there a bandage around Detchard's arm?

a) The door injured him.	b) An animal hit him.
c) Michael punished him.	d) Rassendyll had shot at him at the summer house.

51. What did Sapt want Rassendyll to do at the ball?

a) To tell the Princess that he wasn't the King.	b) To ask the princess to marry him.
c) To ask the Princess to tell him the secret of the king.	d) To ask the princess not to trust Michael.

52. Who arranged the ball for the Queen?

a) Fritz.	b) Rassendyll.
c) Sapt	d) Michael.

53. Why didn't Rassendyll agree to ask the Princess to marry him?

a) Because he didn't love her.	b) Because she loved Michael.
c) Because he thought it wasn't fair for her.	d) It wasn't a suitable time.

54. Why was Flavia pleased for Rassendyll "the King"?

a) Because he had done a very good job as a king.	b) Because he went to the summer house.
c) As he could shoot Detchard.	d) Because he made a ball for her.

55. What mistake did Rassendyll make while sitting with the princess during the ball?

a) He told her when he was younger; he didn't think he needed to worry about society.	b) He didn't ask Michael to get in.
c) He wanted to tell her that he wasn't the real King.	d) Both a and b are correct.

56. Why did Rassendyll want to tell the Princess the truth about his not being the real King?

a) She was kind and clever.	b) She was going to marry the king.
c) She should know what had happened to her future husband.	d) a, b and c are all correct.

57. Why couldn't Rassendyll tell the princess the truth during the ball?

a) As Fritz didn't allow him to do this.	b) As the king arrived suddenly.
c) Sapt interrupted him that someone wanted to see him.	d) Michael came at that time and prohibited him.

58. At the ball Rassendyll looked up and jumped with fright when a face suddenly appeared at

a) the Italian window.	b) the French window.
c) the German door.	d) the Belgium gate.

59. What made Rassendyll think his game had gone too far to go back?

a) As he couldn't tell anyone who he really was or they would think he was mad.	b) Because Fritz's plan was working.
c) As the Princess agreed to marry him.	d) Michael killed the real King.

60. Why could Rassendyll arrange for the Duke and the real King to be killed and stay king forever?

a) As Flavia would support him to do so.	b) As everyone really thought he was the King.
c) As Sapt and Fritz asked him to do so.	d) As the marshal would be beside him.

61. Why couldn't Rassendyll continue playing the role of the King forever?

a) It wasn't fair for the people and the Princess.	b) He must face Michael.
c) He couldn't leave the King imprisoned.	d) a, b and c are correct.

62. Why did Rassendyll visit the Princess again?

a) To warn her that the situation in Ruritania was not as good as she believed it to be.	b) To ask her to marry him.
c) To tell her the truth about his identity.	d) To warn her against the Marshal.

63. What two letters did the princess receive?

a) One was from Michael, the other from Antoinette.	b) One was from the Duke and the other from the Marshal.
c) One was from the King and the other from Sapt.	d) One was from Antoinette and other from Sapt.

64. What made Rassendyll guess that Antoinette was the sender of the letter which Flavia received?

a) As it initialized with her name.	b) She told him she would send a letter to the Princess.
c) As the writing was the same as that of the letter Rassendyll had received from her before.	d) She wrote on the other side of the letter to ask Sapt about her..

65. What did Antoinette tell Flavia in her letter to her?

a) She didn't want Flavia to fall into the power of the King.	b) She asked her not to accept any invitation from Michael and not to go anywhere without many guards.
c) She asked her to show the letter to the King of Ruritania.	d) a, b and c are correct.

66. How would Flavia reply to Michael's invitation to her?

a) She would say that she was too ill to go.	b) She would say that she was too worried to go.
c) She would say that she would marry Rassendyll.	d) She would say that she would go hunting.

67. If the King didn't return, Strakencz is ordered to become

a) the King of Strelsau.	b) the head of Ruritania
c) the head of the capital	d) the ruler of the country

68. When would the Marshal make himself the head of Strelsau?

a) If the King was dead.	b) If the real King was freed.
c) If he didn't get a message for three days from the King.	d) If Flavia asked him so.

69. What first must the Marshal do before telling people that the new ruler would be Princess Flavia?

a) He should ask Michael to let him see the King.	b) He should kill Michael.
c) He should tell people Rassendyll wasn't the real King.	d) He should take Sapt's permission.

Chapter 6

1) Answer the following questions:

1. Rassendyll's writing is different from the King's. What reason does Rassendyll give?
2. Why might this difference be a problem for Marshal Strakencz?
3. What reason does Rassendyll give Princess Flavia for leaving Strelsau?
4. What does he ask her to do if he doesn't come back?
5. Where do Rassendyll and his men stay for their hunting trip?
6. Where is it and who does it belong to?
7. What reason does Michael give for not visiting "King" Rassendyll or inviting him to his castle?
8. Why do Rassendyll and Fritz go to the inn at Zenda?
9. Who do they talk to there and what do they say?
10. What happens to Bernenstein while Fritz and Rassendyll are out?
11. What message does Rupert Hentzau bring the next day? How does Rassendyll reply?
12. What happens when Rupert is leaving?
13. What do they learn from Johann?
14. Describe the room and the pipe where the real King is being kept.
15. What is the plan if they are attacked?
16. Why do they send Johann back to the castle?
17. What reason did Rassendyll tell the ten men for attacking Michael?
18. How did Sapt describe Hentzau?
19. Rassendyll was Johann's only chance to escape from Michael. Explain

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What reason did Rassendyll give for his handwriting being different?

a) Rassendyll said it was because of his injured finger.	b) His pen was different.
c) He said he couldn't write like the King.	d) He wasn't the real King.
2. Why might this difference in handwriting be a problem for Marshal Strakencz?

a) People might think it wasn't a real order from the King.	b) The Duke might not believe it.
c) The Princess might refuse to be the ruler.	d) The Marshal wanted to be the King.
3. What promise did the Marshal make to the king (Rassendyll)?

a) He promised to protect Antoinette from the Duke.	b) He said the Princess would be safe with him.
c) He promised to help him to kill Michael.	d) He said he would save the Real King.
4. When would Michael legally be a king?

a) Only if he married Antoinette.	b) Only if he married the Princess.
c) Only if he killed the real King.	d) Only if he killed Rassendyll.
5. Who did Rassendyll trust to keep the future of Ruritania safe?

a) Fritz.	b) Michael.
c) Sapt.	d) Marshal Strakencz.
6. Whose mother was royal?

a) Rudolf Rassendyll.	b) Michael.
c) Rudolf Elphberg.	d) Detchard.
7. What did the Marshal promise Rassendyll (the pretend king)?

a) The Princess would be safe with him.	b) He would kill Michael.
c) He would attack the castle.	d) He would free the real King.
8. What reason did Rassendyll give Princess Flavia for leaving Strelsau?

a) He said he was going to hunt a big animal, Michael.	b) He told her he was going to save the King.
c) He told her he was going to go hiking.	d) He told her he was going to the Alps to write a book.
9. Why did Flavia blame Rassendyll when he said he was leaving Strelsau for hunting?

a) As he would be a friend to Michael.	b) As he left Strelsau without a ruler.
c) As he preferred hunting to doing his duties.	d) As he was going without her.

10. What did Rassendyll ask Flavia to do if he doesn't come back?

a) He told her to bring the army and fight Michael.	b) He told her she must become Queen.
c) He told her to wait for him in the palace.	d) He asked her to free the real King.

11. What do you think of Flavia after her promise to be a queen?

a) She was careless.	b) She was patriotic.
c) She was naïve.	d) She was a traitor.

12. Where did Rassendyll and his men stay for their hunting trip?

a) They stayed in the castle of Zenda.	b) They stayed in the hunting lodge.
c) They stayed in a country house called Tarlenheim.	d) They stayed in the inn.

13. What was Tarlenheim house?

a) It was an old country house.	b) It was about ten kilometres from Zenda.
c) It was on top of a low hill in a leafy wood.	d) It belonged to Sapt's relative.

14. Who was the Tarlenheim house belong to?

a) To Fritz's neighbour.	b) To Sapt's relative.
c) To Michael.	d) To Fritz's relative.

15. Who did Rassendyll take to rescue the King?

a) A large party of servants and ten brave, royal and strong men.	b) A large party of servants and ten brave, loyal and strong men.
c) A large party of servants and ten brave, loyal and weak men.	d) A large party of servants and ten cowardly, loyal and strong men.

16. What did Rassendyll tell the men who went with him to Tarlenheim about their mission?

a) They would kill Michael.	b) They would destroy the castle.
c) They would hunt a big animal.	d) They would set a prisoner free.

17. What reason did Duke Michael give for not visiting "King" Rassendyll or inviting him to his castle?

a) He said he was busy because his men needed help.	b) He said he was angry with the pretend king.
c) He said that he couldn't leave Antoinette De Mauban alone.	d) He said he and many of his servants had a dangerous illness.

18. What did Sapt say about Rupert on visiting the Tarlenheim house?

a) He was polite.	b) He was formal.
c) He was young and brave.	d) He was the worst criminal.

19. Why did Rassendyll set off for Zenda with Fritz?

a) To visit the inn to have a meal and find Michael.	b) To see the castle.
c) To find Johann.	d) To meet the innkeeper's daughter.

20. Why did Rassendyll cover his face when he entered the inn?

a) So that no one would recognize him.	b) So that no one would kill him.
c) So that no one would shoot him.	d) So that no one would reward him.

21. Why didn't Johann go to the inn any longer?

a) Because he worked at the castle then.	b) Because innkeeper prevented him.
c) Because he went to the capital.	d) Because he was afraid from Michael.

22. Why did Rassendyll and Fritz feel safe on the road to Zenda?

a) Because Michael was at the castle.	b) Because there were many guards following them.
c) Because the Marshal was with them.	d) Because there were many people on the roads.

23. What did Rassendyll ask the girl not to do?

a) To tell everyone that she had met the king.	b) Not to tell anyone that she had seen the king.
c) Not to ask Johann to meet her.	d) Not to open the gate for any one.

24. What did the girl do when she saw Rassendyll?

a) The girl dropped the plates of food.	b) She was surprised to see the King.
c) The girl told her mother that the King was here.	d) The girl fainted as soon as he saw him.

25. The innkeeper's daughter gets a message to	
a) Max Holf.	b) Johann Holf.
c) Johann's mother.	d) Johann's sister.
26. What would Rassendyll forgive the innkeeper's daughter for?	
a) For calling him Rassendyll.	b) For what she and her mother said about the King.
c) For meeting Johann secretly.	d) for wanting Michael to be the King.
27. What happened to Bernenstein while Fritz and Rassendyll are out?	
a) He was shot in the arm while he was out in the woods.	b) He was kidnapped by Michael's men.
c) He saw Michael in the forest.	d) He had a bullet in his legs.
28. Why did Rupert visit Tarlenheim house alone?	
a) He wanted to speak to Sapt.	b) He wanted to kill Rassendyll.
c) He brought an offer from the Duke to Rassendyll.	d) He wanted to revenge for himself.
29. How did Rupert make Rassendyll angry?	
a) He called him as Rassendyll not the King.	b) He offered him a bribe.
c) He didn't ask him to go to the castle.	d) He told him that Michael was ill.
30. Why couldn't Michael and his men say in public that Rassendyll wasn't the real king?	
a) People would know they had kidnapped the real King.	b) People would know they hid the King in the castle.
c) People would know they killed the real King.	d) People would know that Michael would marry Flavia.
31. How much gold did the Duke offer Rassendyll to leave the country?	
a) 100 gold pieces.	b) A million gold pieces.
c) 50, 000 gold pieces.	d) 10 gold pieces.
32. What did Rupert stab Rassendyll with at the Tarlenheim house?	
a) A knife.	b) A sword.
c) A penknife.	d) A dagger.
33. Why was Rassendyll angry after Rupert stabbed him?	
a) He was angry at letting himself fall for Rupert's trick.	b) He was angry that his men didn't defend him.
c) He was angry at refusing Rupert's offer.	d) He was angry at letting Rupert escape.
34. What strange thing did Fritz notice about Johann?	
a) Johann was happy to be at Tarlenheim.	b) He seemed to know a lot of information.
c) He was afraid of the King.	d) He wanted to work as a spy.
35. What did Rassendyll understand about Johann's character?	
a) Johann was a strong man but not a wicked one.	b) Johann was a weak man but not a wicked one.
c) Johann was a weak man and a wicked one.	d) Johann was a weak man but not a good one.
36. What was the pipe made of?	
a) Stone.	b) Iron.
c) Brass.	d) Plastic.
37. What would happen if the first room of the King's prison was attacked?	
a) Detchard would kill the King.	b) The three guards would escape from the pipe.
c) The three men would kill the King.	d) De Gautet would kill the King.
38. What would be done with the King's body after killing him?	
a) The body should be buried in the hunting lodge.	b) The weight of his chains would keep the body float.
c) The body would be put down the pipe.	d) The body would return to Strelsau.
39. According to Johann, why wasn't it easy to sleep at the castle of Zenda?	
a) It was full of ghosts.	b) Everyone in it was a criminal, except the king.
c) Criminals try to hurt everyone.	d) There is much noise.
40. Who would kill the King if the castle was attacked?	
a) Rupert.	b) De Gautet.
c) Detchard.	d) Michael.

41. Why couldn't the King's body float if it was thrown into the moat?

a) As he was heavy.	b) Due to the chains.
c) As the moat was deep.	d) It was tied.

42. How would Michael's men escape after killing the King?

a) They would escape down the pipe.	b) The Duke's horses would take them to safety.
c) They would escape through the back gate.	d) Both a and b are correct.

43. One of the Six Men would take the king's place pretending

a) that he had killed the king.	b) that he had been rude to him.
c) that he had been a spy.	d) that he had been rude to Antoinette.

44. Why did they send Johann back to the castle?

a) To get more information.	b) Not to make any one suspect them.
c) To kill Michael.	d) Both a and b are correct.

45. helps to put up the pipe to the prison window in the castle.

a) Rupert Hentzau	b) Bersonin
c) Johann Holf	d) Max Holf

46. All people at the castle are criminals except

a) Johann.	b) Johann's mother.
c) The King.	d) Antoinette de Mauban.

47. Why does Sapt think Rassendyll will still be King after a year?

a) The King doesn't want to return.	b) Michael doesn't want to be a king.
c) Either they attack the castle secretly or openly the King would be dead.	d) Rassendyll wants to be a king forever.

48. According to Rassendyll, how could the King be rescued?

a) By magic.	b) By a fight.
c) By a miracle or betrayal.	d) By luck.

Chapter 7

1) Answer the following questions:

- What three pieces of news arrive at Tarlenheim the next day?
- What did Rassendyll consider a very strange situation?
- Why do Rassendyll and the others go to the castle at night?
- Why does Rassendyll kill Max Holf?
- Who gets killed in the fight in the woods? Who gets away?
- Why were Rassendyll's bags found at a train station near Zenda?
- Why is the Chief of Police looking for Mr Rassendyll?
- Rassendyll meets Rupert the next day while they are out riding. What plan does Rupert offer to Rassendyll?
- Why is Antoinette de Mauban being kept as a prisoner of the Duke?
- Why does Rassendyll ask Antoinette de Mauban to cry out for help at two o'clock in the morning?
- Why does Rupert Hentzau swim across the moat to go back to the mansion?
- Why doesn't he use the drawbridge?
- What did Rassendyll offer Johann? Why?
- What was Rassendyll's plan to rescue the King?
- What did Antoinette ask Rassendyll to do in her second letter?
- Why was Hentzau ready to work against Michael?

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. How did the Duke think that Rassendyll was injured?

- a) He was injured while hunting.
c) An animal bit him.

- b) He knew the truth from Hentzau.
d) The Marshal stabbed him.

2. Why did Rassendyll and his men go to the castle, the first time?

- a) To rescue the king.
c) To explore the moat and the castle.

- b) To kill Michael.
d) To swim.

3. Who was in the boat in the moat?

- a) Johann.
c) Max Holf.

- b) Rupert.
d) De Gautet.

4. How did Rassendyll justify his killing Max while he was sleeping?

- a) It was peace.
c) It was war.

- b) It was night.
d) It was his habit.

5. Why couldn't anyone hear Rassendyll's boat in the moat?

- a) There was a lot of noise coming from the mansion.
c) Rassendyll rowed very quietly.

- b) The boat was too far to be heard.
d) As the wind was blowing hard.

6. What did the King asked Detchard to do?

- a) Why Michael didn't feed him.
c) Why Michael didn't help him.

- b) Why Michael didn't free him.
d) Why Michael didn't kill him.

7. What did Rassendyll do with Max Holf's body?

- a) He left it in the boat.
c) He asked Sapt to pull it up.

- b) He threw it into the water.
d) He burnt it.

8. Sapt for the men in the forest to come to the castle to take them.

- a) shouted.
c) waved.

- b) called.
d) whistled.

9. How many men were killed in the forest near the castle of Zenda?

- a) Seven.
c) Three.

- b) Ten.
d) Five.

10. Who did Rassendyll's men kill?

- a) Detchard and Bersonin.
c) Max Holf and Rupert Hentzau.

- b) Rupert Hentzau and Bernenstein.
d) Lauengram and Krafstein.

11. Who called out "They've got me, Rupert!"?

- a) One of Rassendyll's men.
c) Lauengram or Krafstein.

- b) Detchard or Bersonin.
d) Sapt or Fritz.

12. How did Rupert save himself from Rassendyll in the fight near the castle?

- a) He shot him with a gun.
c) He jumped in the moat and swam away.

- b) He use his sword to cut the stick then escaped in the dark.
d) He stabbed him with his knife.

13. Who told the King that the Duke wouldn't kill him now?

- a) Detchard.
c) Bersonin.

- b) Rupert.
d) De Gautet.

14. What did the King do after Detchard had left his room?

- a) He cried quietly.
c) He left immediately.

- b) He slept at once.
d) He escaped from the pipe.

15. Who visited Zenda to meet the King (Rassendyll)?

- a) The Chief of the police.
c) Lord Topham.

- b) Rupert.
d) De Gautet.

16. What did the Chief of the Police asked Rassendyll about?

a) If he had seen Max Holf.	b) If he knew Rassendyll.
c) If he had known Antoinette de Mauban.	d) If he fought with Michael.

17. Who was looking for the real Rassendyll?

a) Chief of Police.	b) George Featherly.
c) The English Ambassador.	d) Sir Jacob Borrodaile.

18. Why did Rassendyll ask the Chief of the Police to return to Strelsau?

a) He wanted to arrest Michael.	b) He wanted to have two weeks without any difficult questions.
c) He didn't have any problems until he left Ruritania.	d) He wanted him to protect Flavia.

19. Why were Rassendyll's bags found at a train station near Zenda?

a) Rassendyll had sent the bags ahead to the station on the morning of the day he met the King in the woods.	b) Johann sent them when Rassendyll left the inn.
c) He forgot them at the station because he got lost on the day of the coronation.	d) The guards found them when he was walking in the forest.

20. What was Rassendyll's offer to Rupert Hentzau?

a) Rassendyll asked Rupert to let the King go free.	b) Rassendyll would help Rupert if he didn't work for the King.
c) Rassendyll asked Rupert to kill the King.	d) Rassendyll asked Rupert to let the King go abroad.

21. Why was Rupert ready to help Rassendyll?

a) He wanted to rescue the King.	b) He wanted to help Antoinette de Mauban.
c) He wanted to get a reward.	d) He was an honourable man.

22. Why does Rupert think about Michael?

a) He was brave.	b) He was about to be a king.
c) He was a good man.	d) He wasn't good and made Rupert angry.

23. What did Rupert ask Rassendyll to do?

a) To attack the palace.	b) To attack the castle.
c) To attack Zenda.	d) To attack Strelsau.

24. Who did Rupert want to kill as a condition to help Rassendyll?

a) The Duke.	b) The King.
c) Sapt and Fritz.	d) a, b and c are correct.

25. Who did the Duke imprison in the mansion?

a) Antoinette de Mauban.	b) Flavia.
c) Rose.	d) Johann's mother.

26. Who brought Rassendyll the second message from Antoinette?

a) A young boy.	b) Johann.
c) Antoinette's servants.	d) Chief of Police.

27. Why did Antoinette de Mauban send another letter to Rassendyll?

a) She wanted him to meet her at the summer house.	b) She asked him to save the King.
c) She wanted him to rescue her.	d) She asked him to marry the Princess.

28. Why did Antoinette ask Rassendyll to rescue her?

a) Michael wanted to marry her.	b) Michael imprisoned her in a house of murders.
c) Michael wanted to kill her.	d) She wanted to go home.

29. To keep the people of Strelsau happy, Rassendyll's messengers told them

a) the King would soon be in Strelsau.	b) the King would free the prisoner.
c) the King would marry the Princess.	d) the King would kill Michael.

30. How was Duke Michael when he heard about the Princess's wedding?

a) He was surprised.	b) He was relieved.
c) He was shocked.	d) He was angry.

31. What did the doctor advise the Duke to do?

a) To give the King more medicine.	b) To send the King to hospital.
c) To set the King free.	d) To poison the King.

32. Why did Rassendyll have to do something quickly to save the King?

a) The King was weak and ill.	b) They couldn't wait any longer or the King would surely die.
c) The King was carried to hospital.	d) Both a and b are correct.

33. Why was Johann given a lot of money?

a) To free the King.	b) To help Antoinette de Mauban.
c) To kill Michael.	d) To work as a spy.

34. What will the servants in the castle do as they don't know the King is the prisoner in the castle?

a) They will obey Michael and serve him.	b) They will arrest Johann.
c) They will think Rassendyll is the King and obey him.	d) They will kill the prisoner.

35. Why would Rassendyll give Johann fifty thousand gold pieces?

a) To kill Michael.	b) To save the King.
c) To give Antoinette a message and to open the gate at 2.00.	d) To work as a spy.

36. Who would cry for help at two o'clock?

a) Johann.	b) The servants.
c) Michael.	d) Antoinette de Mauban.

37. What would Sapt do to the new servants if they didn't help him?

a) He would tie them.	b) He would kill them.
c) He would forgive them.	d) He would imprisoned them with the King.

38. Why do you think the music would be played at the Tarlenheim house?

a) To make people think they had a ball.	b) To enjoy themselves.
c) The Princess would be married.	d) To celebrate that Rassendyll would be a king forever..

39. What would the Marshal do if the King didn't return?

a) He would be a king.	b) He would tell people the truth.
c) He would return to Strelsau to make Flavia a queen.	d) He would kill Michael.

40. How did Rassendyll descend into the moat?

a) He jumped.	b) By his horse.
c) By tying a rope to a tree.	d) Sapt helped him.

41. How did Rupert cross the moat to the mansion?

a) He used the drawbridge.	b) He used hidden steps and swam.
c) He dived.	d) He jumped.

42. As a kind of deception, the Tarlenheim country house

a) will be filled with music.	b) will be demolished.
c) will be cleaned.	d) will be rented.

43. If they do not return to Tarlenheim the next day, Marshal Strakencz would

a) ask Michael to see the King.	b) make himself king.
c) set the King free.	d) marry Princess Flavia.

44. What would Sapt do to the new servants if they didn't help him?

a) He would tie them.	b) He would kill them.
c) He would forgive them.	d) He would put them with the King.

45. Who did Rassendyll see crossing the drawbridge with Rupert?

a) Detchard.	b) Bersonin.
c) Michael.	d) de Gautet.

Chapter 8

1) Answer the following questions:

- Where does Rassendyll wait for it to be two o'clock?
- Rassendyll has asked Antoinette to cry for help at two o'clock. Why does she do it earlier?
- How does Rassendyll get the keys to the King's prison?
- Who gets killed in the first room of the King's prison?
- Who gets killed in the room where the King is? Who gets wounded?
- Why doesn't the King fight Detchard directly? How does he help Rassendyll?
- Why was Rassendyll worried when Rupert stabbed Johann?
- Who kills the Duke? Why?
- Why does Rupert ride away instead of fighting Rassendyll?
- How does the boy make a problem for Sapt, Fritz and Rassendyll?
- Why does Sapt tell the Princess to come alone to see the King behind the tree?
- Why does Sapt have the real King taken from his prison with his face covered?
- What do Sapt's men and the servants think happened to the King and to the prisoner?
- After his fight with Hentzau, why does Rassendyll wait in the forest until dark to go to the castle?
- How does Rassendyll teach the King how to be a real king?
- What did people know about the strange prisoner of Zenda?
- What does Rassendyll learn from his adventures?

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- What made Rassendyll get out of the moat after Rupert had got into the mansion?

- | | |
|--------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| a) He wanted to hear what was happening in the castle. | b) He wanted to get a better view. |
| c) It was cold waiting in the water of the moat. | d) He wanted to hide from Michael. |

- When would Antoinette shout?

- | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------|
| a) At two o'clock. | b) At midnight. |
| c) At the appointed time. | d) At one o'clock. |

- When did Antoinette shout?

- | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------|
| a) At two o'clock. | b) At midnight. |
| c) At the appointed time. | d) At one o'clock. |

- Why did Rupert want to punish Antoinette de Mauban?

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| a) She wanted to marry Michael. | b) She wrote secret letters to Rassendyll. |
| c) She betrayed Rassendyll. | d) She wanted to get rid of Rupert. |

- Why did Michael want to punish Rupert?

- | | |
|---------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| a) Because Antoinette was Rassendyll's spy. | b) Because he knew what he said to Rassendyll. |
| c) Because Antoinette was Michael's guest. | d) Because he made him angry. |

- What did Rupert do with Johan?

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| a) Rupert gave him a reward. | b) Rupert gave him some money. |
| c) Rupert hit him with his sword. | d) Rupert set him free. |

- Who killed Michael?

- | | |
|---------------|----------------|
| a) Sapt. | b) Rupert. |
| c) De Gautet. | d) Rassendyll. |

- Why did Antoinette de Mauban call for help at one o'clock?

- | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| a) Michael tried to punish her. | b) Rassendyll asked her to do so at that time. |
| c) Rupert Hentzau had entered her room to punish her. | d) She wanted to attract attention to save the King. |

- How could Rupert escape from Michael and his men in Antoinette's room?

- | | |
|----------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| a) He jumped out of the window down into the moat. | b) He used the drawbridge. |
| c) He killed Johann and escaped from the door. | d) Detchard helped him to escape. |

10. Who had the keys of the King's prison?

a) Bersonin.	b) Rupert.
c) De Gautet.	d) Detchard.

11. Who was inside the castle when Rassendyll entered it?

a) De Gautet and Bersonin.	b) Bersonin and Detchard.
c) Lauengram and Krafstein.	d) Rupert Hentzau and Detchard.

12. Who killed the three foreigners?

a) Sapt.	b) The real King.
c) Rassendyll's seven men.	d) Rassendyll.

13. Why was Rassendyll worried after Detchard closed the door of the King's prison?

a) He remembered that he had no weapons.	b) He remembered that Detchard was the worst criminal of Michael's men all.
c) He remembered the doctor's words about the King.	d) He remembered the Duke's plan to kill the King.

14. Why couldn't the King help the doctor hold Detchard?

a) He was weak and was chained in one corner.	b) He was still poisoned from the cakes.
c) He wanted Detchard to kill the doctor.	d) He thought Detchard would set him free.

15. How did the King help Rassendyll to kill Detchard?

a) He pushed the legs of a chair hard into Detchard's body.	b) He pushed a table at Detchard body.
c) He shot Detchard with his gun.	d) He killed Detchard with his sword.

16. How did Rassendyll know that the King was still alive after Detchard struck him?

a) When the King moaned.	b) When the King moved.
c) When the King cried.	d) When the King shouted.

17. Why did Detchard fall to the ground while fighting Rassendyll?

a) He was weak.	b) He fell over the doctor's body.
c) He was running.	d) He fainted.

18. Who told Rupert that he killed Michael?

a) The servants.	b) The real King.
c) Antoinette.	d) Flavia.

19. What did Antoinette tell Rupert when he came back to fight Michael?

a) He killed Johann.	b) He injured Johann.
c) He killed the real King.	d) He would be the leader.

20. What did Rupert ask the men to do after knowing that Michael was killed?

a) To put down their weapons.	b) To revenge Michael.
c) To go to Strelsau.	d) To accept them as their king.

21. Why did Rupert jump into the moat again and escaped?

a) He was afraid of Michael.	b) Antoinette pointed her gun at him.
c) He was afraid of Rassendyll.	d) Sapt arrived with his men.

22. How did Rupert climb up the moat?

a) He used Rassendyll's rope.	b) He used a boat.
c) He jumped.	d) By a ladder.

23. How did Rupert get a horse in the forest?

a) He took it from a farmer working in a field.	b) He found it tied into a tree.
c) It was Rassendyll's horse.	d) He took it from a boy going to the market.

24. What did Rupert blame Rassendyll for?

a) Killing his friends.	b) Entering the castle.
c) Not following his plan.	d) Chasing him.

25. Where was the boy going with his horse?

a) To school.	b) To the station.
c) To the inn.	d) To the market.

26. What did Rassendyll ask Rupert to do?

a) To give him the horse of the boy.	b) To escape before killing him.
c) To get off his horse and to fight with him.	d) To help him.

27. How could Rassendyll wound Rupert in their fight in the forest?

a) He stabbed him in his shoulder.	b) He shoot him with a bullet in his arm.
c) He used his sword to cut his cheek.	d) He shoot him in his finger.

28. Who rescued Rassendyll from being killed by Rupert?

a) Sapt.	b) The real King.
c) Fritz.	d) Antoinette.

29. Why didn't Fritz go after Rupert as Rassendyll asked him?

a) As he knew Sapt would kill Rupert.	b) He refused to leave Rassendyll who didn't look well.
c) As he thought the boy would recognise Rassendyll.	d) Rupert was holding a gun.

30. How did Antoinette feel towards the Duke at first?

a) She hated him.	b) She refused his evil plans.
c) She thought he was a murderer.	d) She respected the Duke and was pleased to be his guest.

31. What made Antoinette change her opinion of the Duke?

a) He wanted to marry Flavia.	b) She didn't like the Duke's evil plans.
c) He was rude with her in Paris.	d) Rassendyll told her he was evil.

32. How did the Duke trick Antoinette?

a) He invited her and her servants to the summer house and locked them there.	b) He invited her and her servants to Strelsau and locked them there.
c) He invited her and her servants to his castle and locked them there.	d) He invited her and her servants to Paris and locked them there.

33. Why was the Duke holding Antoinette a prisoner?

a) To stop her from telling anyone about his plan.	b) To prevent her from marrying Rupert.
c) To stop her from returning to Paris.	d) To make her take care of the King.

34. Why did Antoinette work against Michael?

a) She wanted to be a queen.	b) She didn't like his ambition to be a king.
c) Michael hurt her.	d) Michael threatened her.

35. When Rupert knew that Antoinette was helping Rassendyll, he wanted to

a) marry her.	b) punish her.
c) reward her.	d) bribe her.

36. Why did Rupert think Rassendyll pretended to be the king?

a) For himself.	b) To marry Princess Flavia.
c) He thought Rassendyll wanted to be a king forever.	d) For Ruritania.

37. Johann opened the front door of the mansion

a) at the appointed time.	b) before the appointed time.
c) after the appointed time.	d) at two o'clock in the morning.

38. Why couldn't Johann open the front door at two o'clock?

a) Because Rupert hurt him.	b) Because he was afraid of being discovered.
c) Because he was helping the King who was injured by Rupert.	d) Because he was helping the duke who was injured by Rupert.

39. Where did Sapt take the King after freeing him?

a) To the palace.	b) To the hunting lodge.
c) To the castle.	d) To the mansion.

40. Who helped the King in the mansion until another doctor arrived?

a) Sapt.	b) Antoinette de Mauban.
c) Fritz.	d) Johann.

41. How did the people think that the King was injured?

a) He was fighting Rassendyll.	b) He was hunting.
c) He was escaping from prison.	d) He was saving the prisoner.

42. What did Sapt ask Antoinette and Johann to do after the King was saved?

a) He asked them to reveal the secret about the real King.	b) He asked them to guard the secret about the real King.
c) He asked them to say that an English friend was the prisoner of Zenda.	d) He asked them to say the King was injured while saving his friend.

43. What did Sapt's men know about what happened in the castle?

a) The prisoner was wounded while fighting to rescue the King.	b) The King was wounded while fighting to rescue the prisoner.
c) Rassendyll was wounded while fighting to rescue the King.	d) Michael was killed while fighting to rescue the King.

44. Princess Flavia's coach was approaching the castle while

a) Rupert was fighting with Rassendyll.	b) Rupert was escaping.
c) Fritz was leading Rassendyll back to the castle.	d) the boy was shouting for help.

45. Who told the Princess about Rassendyll's place?

a) Rupert.	b) Fritz.
c) Sapt.	d) The boy.

46. Where did Princess Flavia know that Rassendyll was not the King?

a) In the forest.	b) In the hunting lodge.
c) In Tarlenheim.	d) In the castle.

47. What did Rassendyll do when he saw the princess's coach going to the castle?

a) He cried loudly.	b) He did nothing.
c) He hurried to the castle.	d) He hid behind a tree.

48. Why did Rassendyll hide behind the tree?

a) In order not to be seen by the Princess.	b) He hid from the boy.
c) He didn't want the Marshal see him.	d) He hid from the real King.

49. What did the Princess accuse Sapt of?

a) She said he was careless.	b) She said he was working against her.
c) She said he was playing a game.	d) She said he was working for Michael.

50. How did Flavia feel when she knew that Rassendyll wasn't the real King?

a) She was delighted and didn't know what to say.	b) She was disappointed and didn't know what to say.
c) She fainted and didn't know what to say.	d) She was frightened and didn't know what to say.

51. Who did the people think the prisoner was?

a) A friend of Sapt.	b) The real King.
c) A friend of the King.	d) One of the six famous.

52. The people of Strelsau thought that Michael had taken a friend of the King's as a prisoner because

a) He had known about his evil plans.	b) He had been writing secret letters to the King.
c) Michael thought this friend would poison the King.	d) He wanted to make himself popular.

53. Where did Rassendyll stay when he came back to the castle?

a) In the mansion.	b) In the room that the king had been kept prisoner in.
c) In the hunting lodge.	d) In the summer house.

54. Why did Rassendyll wait in the forest with Fritz until it was dark?

a) He wanted to find Rupert.	b) He wanted to rest.
c) He didn't want to be recognized.	d) He waited for Sapt to come back.

55. Why was the King grateful to Rassendyll?

a) He taught him hunting.	b) He killed Michael.
c) He could catch Rupert Hentzau.	d) He taught him how to be a King.

56. Why did the King say that he and Rassendyll were always the same?

a) Because both of them were injured in the end.	b) As both of them are lazy.
c) Both of them loved Flavia.	d) As both of them were imprisoned.

57. The King wanted Rassendyll to go back to Strelsau with him, but objected.

a) Marshal Strakencz.	b) Sapt.
c) Antoinette de Mauban.	d) the Princess.

58. Why won't the people of Strelsau be surprised to see the King looking a little different?

a) The King had been imprisoned for some time.	b) The King had realized he was responsible.
c) Because he was returning from a long hunting trip.	d) Because they knew he was injured.

59. Why did Rassendyll think that he might need to help the King again?

a) The King still had to marry the Princess.	b) The King needed Rassendyll's wisdom.
c) The King was injured	d) Rupert had disappeared.

60. What did Flavia tell Rassendyll in the King's room?

a) He had tricked her.	b) He had learnt about responsibilities.
c) He would return to England.	d) He wanted to marry her.

61. Rassendyll apologized to the Princess because he

a) rescued the King.	b) couldn't catch Rupert.
c) tricked her.	d) helped Antoinette de Mauban.

62. Rassendyll told the Princess that he had changed as he

a) became king for some time.	b) saved the King.
c) helped Antoinette de Mauban.	d) knew all about duties and responsibilities.

63. Who went with Rassendyll to see him off?

a) Rupert.	b) Sapt and Fritz.
c) Flavia.	d) The Marshal.

64. The people on the train from Zenda to the border thought Rassendyll was an important man because

a) he looked exactly like the King.	b) he was the King's friend.
c) Sapt and Fritz went to see him off.	d) he was wearing a big coat and hat.

65. Rose felt when she knew that Rassendyll had not written a book.

a) disappointed.	b) surprised.
c) pleased.	d) shocked.

66. Why did Rassendyll disappoint Rose?

a) He told her that he didn't write a book.	b) He said that he wouldn't work with Sir Jacob.
c) He said he was travelling again.	d) He told her he looked like the King of Ruritania.

67. What did Rassendyll show Rose?

a) A photo of the real King.	b) A photo of Strelsau.
c) A photo of him standing beside the King.	d) His photo at the coronation.

68. Why did Rassendyll refuse to work for Sir Jacob at Ruritania?

a) He had enough money.	b) He was ill.
c) He worked there as a king.	d) He was lazy.

69. What excuse did Rassendyll give for refusing to work with Sir Jacob in Ruritania?

a) He didn't like this country.	b) He said he looked exactly like the King of Ruritania.
c) His friends advised him not to that.	d) He said he was the king there.

70. According to Rose, why was refusing the job a great loss for Rassendyll?

a) As Rassendyll could have become an ambassador himself one day.	b) If he didn't go to Ruritania, he would never be anyone important.
c) He may become a king one day.	d) Both a and b are correct.

71. Why did Rassendyll think he didn't need to become an ambassador?

a) He was a member of the Rassendyll family.	b) His brother was Lord Burlesdon.
c) He had been a King.	d) He thought it was not a suitable job.

72. According to Rassendyll, what kind of person had responsibilities?

a) A person with a position only.	b) A person with or without a position.
c) A person without a position only.	d) A person whose brother had a position.

73. What is the moral lesson of the story?

a) Even without a position in society, people all had a duty to help other people when they could.	b) All people become better for helping others under any conditions.
c) Good people are rewarded, but bad people are punished.	d) All the previous are correct.

General questions

- Which character do you admire most?
- What reasons can you give for Michael's greediness?
- To what extent did the element of luck play a big role in the story?
- How far was Rudolf Rassendyll a sensible person?
- What do you think about the character of Rose?
- How far is learning different skills beneficial for a successful young man?
- How far was Rassendyll an adventurous person?
- To what extent did the Duke affect the poor people?
- Colonel Sapt was a cunning person. Explain.
- Prove that Rassendyll had a sense of duty?
- Fate refuted Michael's plan to be king. Illustrate.
- How far were Sapt and Fritz faithful and loyal to the King?
- For Michael, the end justifies the means. Discuss
- Why did the poor people support the Duke not the King?
- To what extent, the King's hobbies affect his popularity.
- Rassendyll challenged Sapt, Fritz and The Marshal. What did he do?
- Michael was smart and cunning. Illustrate
- Give an example to prove that Sapt was a cautious and experienced person.
- How did Rassendyll revenge Josef?
- Poor simple people were kind and generous. Give examples from the story?
- Prove that Rose's words wise.
- When did Rassendyll regret going to Ruritania?
- How far was Antoinette de Mauban honest and respectful?
- How was Rassendyll a man of principle?
- The Marshal was a patriotic and loyal man. Explain
- Rupert Hentzau was a cunning and treacherous man. Give examples.
- The pipe in the moat had two different uses. Explain.
- The house of Tarlenheim was suitable and well-chosen. Why?
- How was Johann one of Michael's weak points?

30. Why did the rescue of the King need a miracle?
31. Was Rassendyll right to continue to pretend to be the King for so long?
32. How many persons did Rassendyll kill in the story?
33. Although betrayal is a bad quality, it helped the King be saved. Illustrate
34. Rassendyll proved to be an experienced planner. To what extent do you agree?
35. How far do you agree that the Prisoner of Zenda an adventure story?
36. Although Rassendyll had agreed to work for Sir Jacob he returned and ate his words. Illustrate
37. Some characters in the story were handcuffed. Who? How? Where were they?
38. How did Rassendyll make use of some simple people to achieve his plan?
39. Skill and wit were much better than strength. Give examples from the story.
40. Rassendyll turned from being an idle to a statesman. Discuss.
41. Despite being jobless, Rudolf boasted of his position in society. Discuss.
42. Rose is a very persuasive person. Explain.
43. Class distinction was evident in Strelsau. Discuss.
44. What was Sapt's plan to frustrate the Duke's treacherous plot to take the crown? (save validity)
45. Duke Michael made use of his brother's weakness point to commit his evil act. Explain
46. How did Flavia show her patriotism?
47. It is said that war has no manners. How is this statement proved right in the story?
48. Antoinette, Johann and Rupert Hentzau betrayed Duke Michael for different reasons. Illustrate
49. Detchard was one of the worst men of the famous Six. Explain.
50. The thought of the man who had almost beaten Rudolf Rassendyll still makes his heart beat louder in his chest. Explain.



Mr Ahmed El-Shabka